

HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 5008





Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot** application for smartphone.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the print edition appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the "Personal space" section or at the following address:

<http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/ddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.



Direct access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.



Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 5008.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



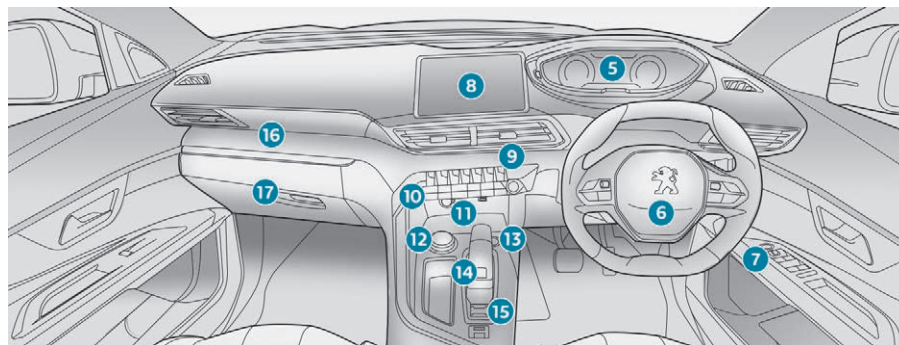
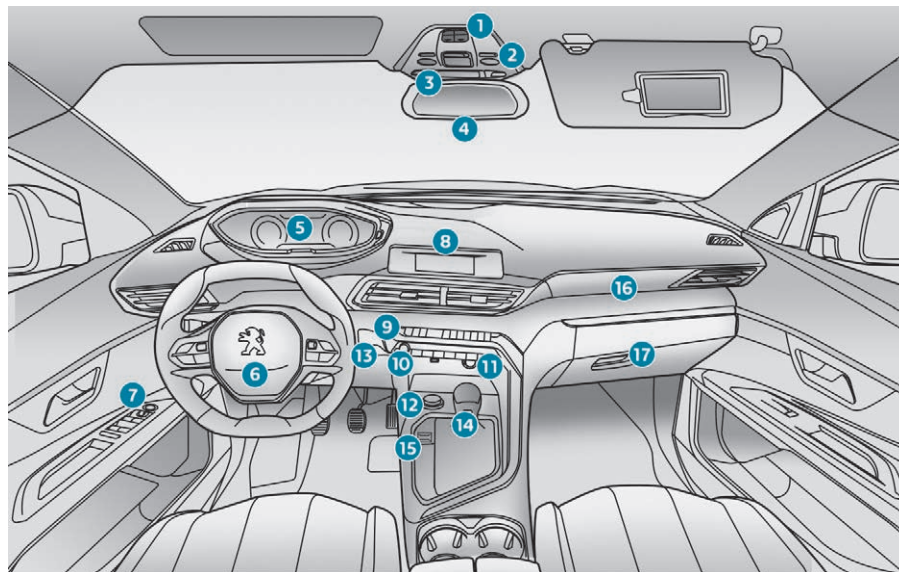
Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle

2

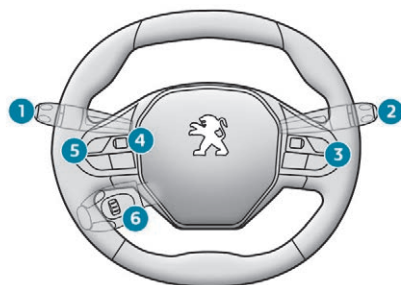
Driving	6	Practical information	7	Technical data	9
Driving recommendations	155	Fuel	220	Engine technical data and towed loads	267
Anti-theft protection	156	Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	221	Petrol engines and towed loads	268
Starting/Switching off the engine with the key	156	Compatibility of fuels	222	Diesel engines and towed loads	269
Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting	158	Towing device	223	Dimensions	272
Electric parking brake	161	Towbar with quickly detachable towball	224	Identification markings	273
Manual gearbox	164	Load reduction mode	227		
Automatic gearbox	165	Energy economy mode	227		
Hill start assist	169	Very cold climate screen	228		
Dynamic pack	170	Snow chains	228		
Gear shift indicator	170	Fitting roof bars	229	Audio equipment and telematics	
Stop & Start	171	Bonnet	230	PEUGEOT Connect Nav	
Under-inflation detection	174	Engine compartment	231	PEUGEOT Connect Radio	
Memorising speeds	175	Checking levels	232	Bluetooth audio system	
Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation	176	Checks	235		
Speed limiter	179	AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)	237		
Cruise control	181			Alphabetical index	
Adaptive cruise control	184				
Distance Alert and Active Safety Brake	192	In the event of a breakdown	8	Access to additional videos	
Fatigue detection system	196	Warning triangle	240		
Lane Departure Warning System	198	Running out of fuel (Diesel)	240		
Active Lane Departure Warning System	198	Tool kit	241		
Blind Spot Monitoring System	203	Temporary puncture repair kit	243		
Parking sensors	205	Spare wheel	246		
Visiopark 1 - Visiopark 2	207	Changing a bulb	252		
Park Assist	212	Changing a wiper blade	257		
		Changing a fuse	257		
		12 V battery	262		bit.ly/helpPSA
		Towing the vehicle	265		



Instruments and controls

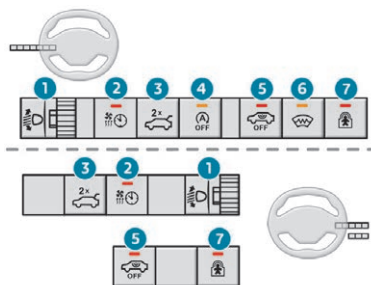
1. Sunroof and blind controls
2. Front courtesy/map reading lamps
3. Warning lamp display for the seat belts and front passenger airbag
Emergency and assistance call buttons
4. Rear view mirror
5. Head-up digital screen
6. Horn
Driver front airbag
7. Door mirror and electric window control panel
8. Monochrome screen with Bluetooth audio system
or
Touch screen with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav
9. Hazard warning lamps
10. Air conditioning system controls
11. 12 V socket/USB socket
Wireless charger
12. Advanced Grip Control
Hill Assist Descent Control
13. Ignition switch
or
"START/STOP" button
14. Gearbox control
"SPORT" button
15. Electric parking brake
16. Front passenger airbag
17. Glove box
Front passenger airbag deactivation switch

Steering mounted controls



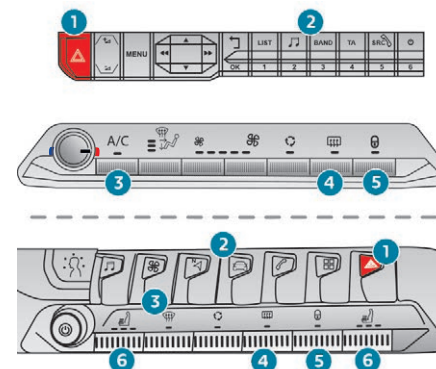
1. External lighting/Direction indicators control stalk
2. Wiper/Screenwash/Trip computer control stalk
3. Audio system setting controls
4. Instrument panel display mode selection wheel
5. Voice synthesis control
Volume adjustment
6. Speed limiter/Cruise control/Adaptive cruise control with Stop function controls

Side switch panel



1. Headlamp beam height adjustment wheel
2. Programmable heating operation indicator lamp
3. Hands-free tailgate opening/closing
4. Deactivation of Stop & Start
5. Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring
6. Heated windscreen
7. Electric child lock

Central switch panel



1. Hazard warning lamps switch
2. Bluetooth audio system controls or
Touch screen controls with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav i-Cockpit Amplify function
3. Manual air conditioning system controls or
Semi-automatic or automatic air conditioning system controls
4. Rear screen demist/defrost control
5. Central locking control
6. Heated seats controls

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if these are not automatically managed.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

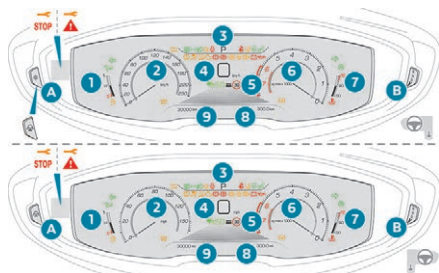
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. As soon as possible, visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to make your vehicle's level of nitrogen oxides emissions compliant to the standard.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Head-up digital screen

Customisable digital instrument panel.
Depending on the selected display mode, some information may be hidden or shown in a different way.



Digital screen

The representation below shows the "DIALS" display mode.

1. Fuel gauge.
2. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
3. Gear efficiency indicator.
Selector mode and gear with an automatic gearbox.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Cruise control or speed limiter setting, display of speed limit signs.

6. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).
7. Engine coolant temperature indicator (°Celsius).
8. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
9. Total distance recorder (miles or km).

Control buttons

- A. Lighting dimmer for the instruments and controls* (available in night mode).
or
Instrument panel ambient lighting**.
- B. Short press: start a manual test.
Long press: reset the service indicator or trip distance recorder (depending on the context).

Displays

Most warning and indicator lamps do not have a fixed position.

The warning and indicator lamps in the second line are displayed from right to left in order of priority.

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

* Versions with monochrome screen.

** Versions with touch screen.

Permanent information

Whatever the display mode selected, the instrument panel displays:

- in fixed locations:
 - gearbox and gear efficiency indicator information,
 - the fuel gauge,
 - the engine coolant temperature indicator,
 - the distance recorders.
- in variable locations:
 - the digital speedometer,
 - status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

Optional information

Depending on the display mode selected and active features, the following information may be displayed:

- the rev counter,
- the trip computer,
- driving aids,
- the speed limiter or cruise control,
- the media currently playing,
- navigation instructions,
- engine information from the Dynamic Pack.

Customisation of the instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel, by choosing:

- the instrument panel display colour**,
- a display mode.

Display language and units

They depend on the configuration of the multifunction screen (configuration menu). When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (km/h, km or mph, miles).

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Choosing a display colour

This depends on the ambience activated by the i-Cockpit Amplify function.

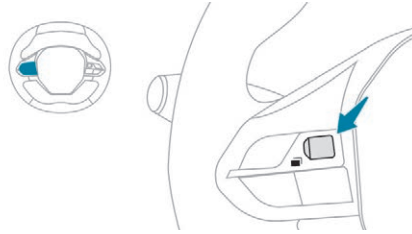
The possible choices are:

- ☞ "Relax": grey,
- ☞ "Boost": red,
- ☞ "Normal" (no ambience activated): blue.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

** Versions with touch screen.

Choice of display mode



To modify the display mode of the instrument panel:

- ☞ Turn the wheel located on the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the different modes on the right-hand side of the instrument panel.
- ☞ Once the selected display mode appears, press on the wheel to validate.

The new display mode is applied instantly.

Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the instrument panel.

- "DIALS": standard display of the analogue and digital speedometers, the rev counter, the fuel gauge, the engine coolant temperature indicator and the distance recorders.
- "NAVIGATION": standard display also showing the current navigation information (map database and navigation instructions).

- "DRIVING": standard display also showing the current driving aid systems information.
 - "MINIMAL": minimal display with digital speedometer and the distance recorders and, in the event of a warning only, the fuel gauge and the coolant temperature indicator.
 - "TRIP COMPUTER"* minimal display also showing the rev counter, current information and the trip recorder selected (1 or 2).
- or
- "PERSONAL"**: minimal display also showing the selection made from the touch screen of the type of information displayed in the customisable areas on the left and right.

To enter settings for the "PERSONAL" display mode and select the information to be displayed in the customisable areas of the instrument panel:



- ☞ Select the **Settings** menu in the upper bar of the touch screen.

or



* Versions with monochrome screen.

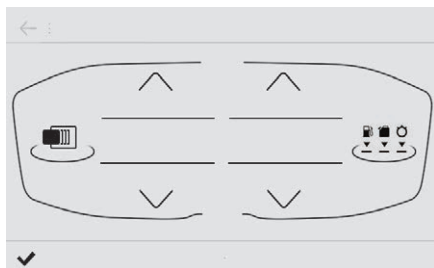
** Versions with touch screen.



Select "**Settings**".



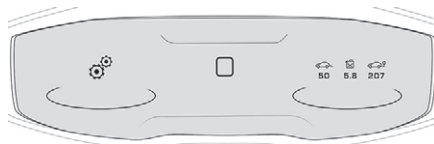
Press the "**Dashboard configuration**" button.



For each customised display area, left and right, select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows in the touch screen:

- "Driving aids",
- "Default" (empty),
- "Engine info" (Dynamic pack),
- "G-metres" (Dynamic pack),
- "Temperatures" (engine oil),
- "Media",
- "Navigation",
- "Trip computer",
- "Rev counter".

Confirm to save and quit.



If the current display mode is "PERSONAL", the new selection is displayed immediately.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Warning and indicator lamps

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

When the engine is started, these same warning lamps should go off.

If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp concerned.

Associated warnings

Most warning lamps in the instrument panel are accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

! Certain warning lamps may come on in one of two modes: fixed (continuous) or flashing. Only by relating the type of illumination to the operation of the vehicle can it be determined whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred.

For more information, refer to the corresponding tables of warning and indicator lamps.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, illumination of one or more of the following warning lamps indicates a fault which requires action on the part of the driver.

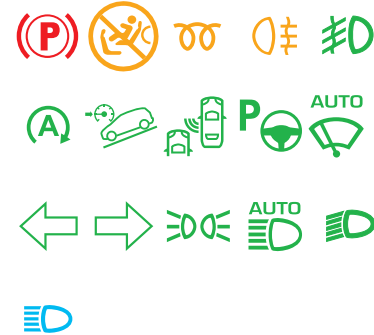
Any fault resulting in the illumination of a warning lamp must be investigated further using the associated alert message.

If you encounter any problems, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Operation indicator lamps

If one or more of the following indicator lamps come on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched on.



Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally. This may be accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.



Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
Red warning/indicator lamps			
	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Illumination of this warning lamp is related to a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault. You must stop the vehicle as soon as traffic and safety conditions permit. Park, switch off the ignition and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Maximum coolant temperature	Fixed, accompanied by the STOP warning lamp.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system. You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Battery charge*	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.). The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. The battery charging level requires the vehicle to be stopped immediately, as soon as road and safety conditions permit. If the electric parking brake does not work, immobilise the vehicle: ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, put the chocks against one of the wheels.
	Door(s) open	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	Speed below 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	Speed above 6 mph (10 km/h), a door or the boot is not properly closed.
	Seat belts not fastened/unfastened	Fixed or Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened. Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle. This warning lamp also lights up in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display, accompanied by the indicator lamps corresponding to the passenger seat belts being unfastened or not fastened.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Electric parking brake	Fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, briefly push the parking brake control lever. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the Electric parking brake , refer to the corresponding section.
		Flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on level ground (horizontally). With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. With an automatic gearbox, place the gear selector in mode P . Switch off the ignition and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with a fluid approved by PEUGEOT. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + 		Fixed, associated with the ABS warning lamp.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations	
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
	Braking	Fixed.	A minor fault with the braking system.	Drive carefully. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is operating.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle in the event of loss of grip or trajectory.
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated.	Activate the functions again. For more information on the Electric parking brake , refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or the start of saturation of the particle filter (as soon as the traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), until the warning lamp goes off). For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel; you must then contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake	Flashing.	The system is operating.	The system brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake	Fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu.	For more information on the Distance Alert/Active Safety Brake system, refer to the corresponding section.
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.	A lane marking has been crossed on the left or right.	Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction to return to the correct trajectory. For more information on the Lane Departure Warning System , refer to the corresponding section.
	Lane Departure Warning System	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has a fault.	Be vigilant and drive carefully. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.	For more information on the Active Lane Departure Warning System , refer to the corresponding section.
		Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
	Active Lane Departure Warning System	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message, an audible signal and the Service warning lamp.	The system has a fault.	Be vigilant and drive carefully. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. For more information on the Active Lane Departure Warning System , refer to the corresponding section.
		Fixed.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on Under-inflation detection , refer to the corresponding section.
	Under-inflation	Fixed.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on Under-inflation detection , refer to the corresponding section.
		Fixed.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold. You must reinitialise the system after adjusting one or more tyre pressures and after changing one or more wheels. For more information on Under-inflation detection , refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations	
 + 		Flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.	Under-inflation detection is no longer assured. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Airbags	Temporarily on.	This warning lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Fixed.	Either the airbag or the pyrotechnic seat belt pretensioner system has a fault.	Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Front passenger airbag	Fixed, in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the "OFF" position. The front passenger airbag is deactivated. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).	Set the control to the "ON" position to activate the front passenger airbag. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 Front passenger airbag	Fixed, in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the ON position. The front passenger airbag is activated.	In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat. Move the control switch to the OFF position to deactivate the front passenger airbag. In this case, you may install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
 Low fuel level	Fixed, with reserve level shown in red, with the display of a message and an audible signal.	When it first comes on there remains approximately 6 litres of fuel in the tank.	You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. This warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, until a sufficient addition of fuel is made. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops and approaches "0". Fuel tank capacity: approximately 56 litres. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
 Engine diagnostic system	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
 + 	AdBlue® (with 1.6 BlueHDi and 2.0 BlueHDi 150 S&S engines)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 375 and 1,500 miles (600 and 2,400 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You must top up the AdBlue® to avoid a breakdown or go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by regulations prevents the engine from restarting.	To be able to restart the engine, you must top up the AdBlue® or go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. It is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 AdBlue® (with 1.5 BlueHDi 130 S&S and 2.0 BlueHDi 180 S&S engines)	Switched on for around 30 seconds when switching on the ignition, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 1,500 miles (800 and 2,400 km).	Top up the AdBlue®. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 60 and 500 miles (100 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible. You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is less than 60 miles (100 km).	You must top up AdBlue® to avoid a breakdown . You can add up to 10 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
	Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to restart the engine, you must top up the AdBlue®. It is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
  	SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected. This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid a breakdown.
		Flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting prevention system prevents starting of the engine. To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

 For topping up or for more information on the **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 Diesel engine pre-heating	Fixed.	When the ignition is switched on with a key in the ignition switch or a starting instruction is made using the " START/STOP " button, the engine temperature makes engine pre-heating necessary.	The period of illumination of the indicator lamp is determined by the climatic conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). With a key in the ignition switch, wait until the indicator lamp goes off before starting. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on the condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox. With Keyless Entry and Starting, once it goes off, starting is immediate, on the condition that the clutch pedal remains pressed with a manual gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
 Stop & Start	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The Stop & Start system is deactivated.	The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop. Reactivate the system by pressing the button again. For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.
 Rear foglamps	Fixed.	The rear foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations	
Green warning/indicator lamps				
	Hill Assist Descent Control	Fixed.	The function has been activated, but is paused because the speed is too high.	Between 19 and 31 mph (30 and 50 km/h), the system is paused. Reduce the speed of the vehicle.
		Fixed.	The function has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, gear engaged).	
		Flashing.	The function is regulating the speed of the vehicle.	The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent. For more information on the Hill Assist Descent Control function, refer to the corresponding section.
	Stop & Start	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, etc.) the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.	The lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		Flashing for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start , refer to the corresponding section.
	Blind Spot Monitoring System	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	For more information on the Blind Spot Monitoring System , refer to the corresponding section.
	Park Assist	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	For more information on the Park Assist , refer to the corresponding section.
	Automatic wiping	Fixed.	The wiper control stalk has been pushed down. Automatic front wiping is activated.	To deactivate automatic wiping, push the wiper control stalk down again or put the wiper control stalk in another position.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps have been switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk once rearwards to switch off the foglamps.
	Left-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved down.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The lighting control stalk has been moved up.	
	Hazard warning lamps	Flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light.	

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Fixed.	The function has been activated via the Vehicle/Driving menu of the touch screen. The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	The camera, placed at the top of the windscreen, manages the main beam headlamps or dipped beam headlamps operation, according to the outside lighting and the driving conditions. For more information on Automatic headlamp dipping, refer to the corresponding section.
Blue warning/indicator lamps			
	Fixed.	The lighting control stalk has been pulled towards you.	Pull the lighting control stalk to return to dipped beam headlamps.

i For more information on the **Lighting control stalk**, refer to the corresponding section.

Electric parking brake

! Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	It lights up, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic release is not available.	If you attempt an automatic release, a help message is displayed upon acceleration while the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
 + 	They light up, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power.	If automatic release is not available, a help message is displayed upon acceleration while the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
 + 	They light up, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic application is not available.	The electric parking brake control lever must be used. The electric parking brake can only be used manually. If automatic release is also not available, a help message is displayed upon acceleration while the parking brake is applied, prompting you to use manual release.
 + 	They light up, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times: they are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever.

Warning/ indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
 +  + 	They light up, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.	When stationary, to immobilise your vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, you should secure your vehicle as follows: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select mode P, then put the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
 +  +  + 	They light up, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake does not have the optimum performance to park the vehicle in complete safety in every situation.	You should secure your vehicle as follows: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select mode P, then put the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the use of the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Indicators

Service indicator

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Service spanner	Fixed, temporary when the ignition is switched on.	There are between 620 miles (1,000 km) and 1,900 miles (3,000 km) before the next service is due.	The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version: - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) before the next service is due. - an alert indicates the distance remaining (in kilometres or miles) as well as the period before the next service is due. The service spanner goes off after a few seconds. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	Less than 620 miles (1,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version: - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due. - an alert message indicates the distance remaining as well as the period before the next service is due. The service spanner remains on to show that a service is required very soon. The alert may be triggered close to the due date.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Action/Observations
	Service spanner	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The servicing interval has been exceeded. The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version: - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance travelled since the service was due. The value is preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that the due date has passed. The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.
		Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on, associated with the Service warning lamp.	Service date passed for BlueHDi Diesel versions. The service indicator is displayed for a few seconds on the instrument panel. Depending on version: - the distance recorder display line indicates the distance travelled since the service was due. The value is preceded by the "-" sign. - an alert message indicates that the due date has passed. The service spanner remains on until the service has been performed. The alert is triggered when the due date has passed.

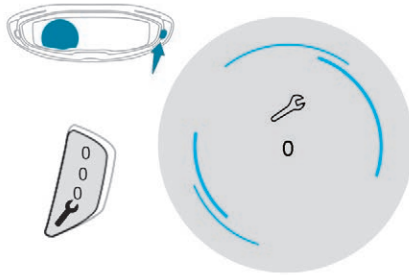
i The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,

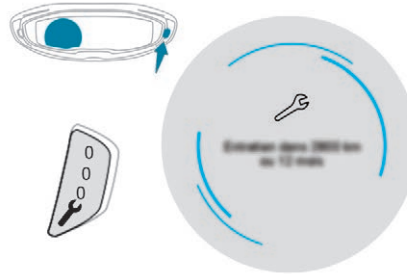


- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ release the button when "0" is displayed; the spanner disappears.

i If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

You can access the service information at any time.

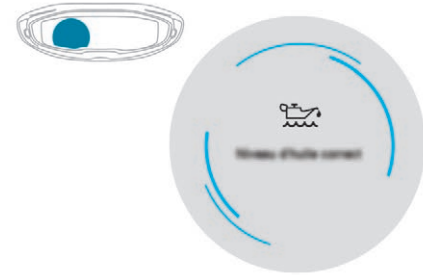


- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.
The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)

On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.



i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect

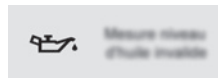


This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel.

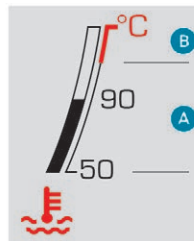
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.

If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; this warning lamp and the central **STOP** warning lamp come on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After first switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.

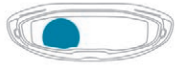
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, (the range) before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.



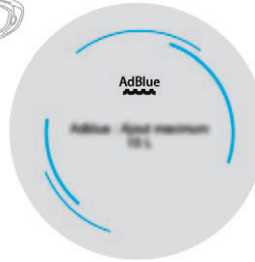
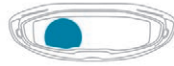
Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)
(with 1.5 BlueHDi 130 S&S and 2.0 BlueHDi 180 S&S engines)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on for about 30 seconds, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.



These messages are accompanied by the recommendation not to top up with more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

Remaining range between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km)
(with 1.6 BlueHDi 100 S&S, 1.6 BlueHDi 115 S&S, 1.6 BlueHDi 120 S&S and 2.0 BlueHDi 150 S&S engines)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message comes up every 185 miles (300 km) until the tank is topped up. The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Remaining range between 500 and 60 miles (800 and 100 km)
(with 1.5 BlueHDi 130 S&S and 2.0 BlueHDi 180 S&S engines)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 60 miles (100 km) until the level is topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Remaining range less than 375 miles (600 km)

(with 1.6 BlueHDi 100 S&S, 1.6 BlueHDi 115 S&S, 1.6 BlueHDi 120 S&S and 2.0 BlueHDi 150 S&S engines)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

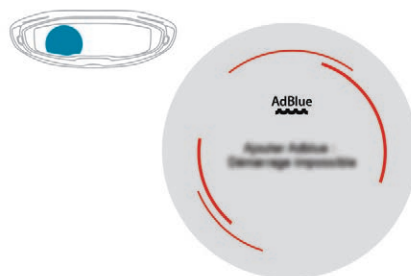
Remaining range less than 60 miles (100 km)
(with 1.5 BlueHDi 130 S&S and 2.0 BlueHDi 180 S&S engines)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up. It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown due to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 685 miles (1,100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the "Emissions fault" message.

The alert is triggered while driving as soon as the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR emissions control system is confirmed (after 31 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, associated with an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 200 miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.

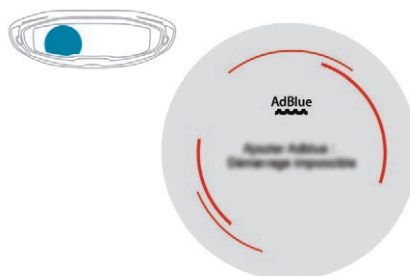
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented



Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

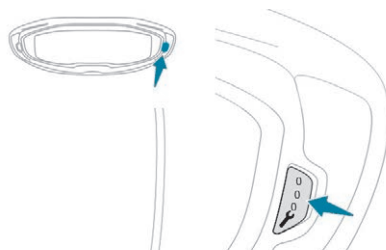


! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

To be able to restart the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual test in the instrument panel

This function allows you, at any time, to check certain indicators and display the alerts log.



With the engine running, briefly press this button.

The following information is displayed in the instrument panel:

- the engine oil level,
- when the next service is due,
- the driving range for the AdBlue and the SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel versions,
- current alerts.

i This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

i When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance unit: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

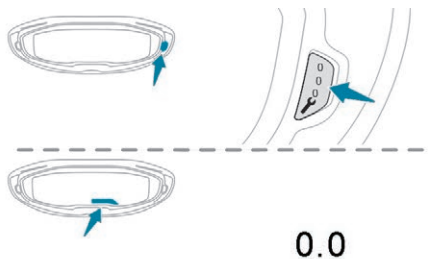
Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



Trip recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.



Resetting the trip recorder

- With the ignition on, press the button until zeroes appear.

Instrument panel lighting dimmer

Version with monochrome screen

Only works when the vehicle lighting is on ("night" mode).

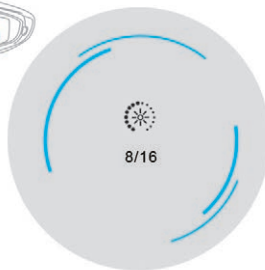
It allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted.



- Press this button to adjust the brightness.
- When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release the button, then press it again to increase brightness.

or

- When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release the button, then press it again to decrease brightness.
- Release the button once the desired level of brightness is reached.



Instrument panel ambient lighting

Version with touch screen

It allows the instrument panel ambient lighting to be switched on or off.



- Press this button.

The brightness of the instrument panel ambient lighting is adjusted in the touch screen.

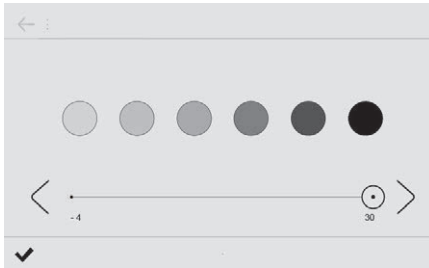


- Select the **Settings** menu in the upper bar of the touch screen.

or



- Press the "**Brightness**" button.



- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the cursor.
- ☞ Confirm to save and quit.

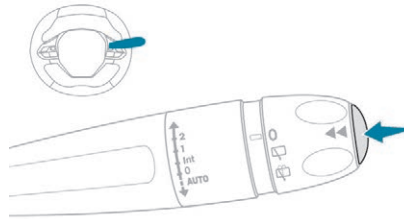
Trip computer

Information displayed about the current journey (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

Display of data on the instrument panel



Trip computer data is displayed permanently when you select the display mode "TRIP COMPUTER" or "PERSONAL", depending on the version. In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.

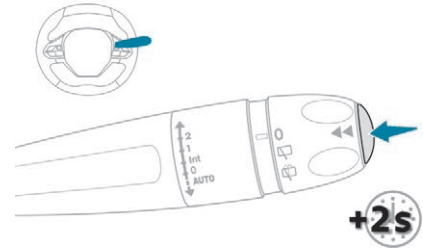


- ☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**, to display the different tabs in turn.

- Current information with:
 - range,
 - current fuel consumption,
 - Stop & Start time counter.
- Trip "1" with:
 - average speed,
 - average fuel consumption,
 - distance travelled, for the first trip.

- Trip "2" with:
 - average speed,
 - average fuel consumption,
 - distance travelled, for the second trip.

Resetting the trip recorder



- ☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than two seconds.
- Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically. Trip "1" allows daily calculations to be carried out, for example, and trip "2" allows monthly calculations.

A few definitions...

Range

(miles or km)



The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the terrain, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter

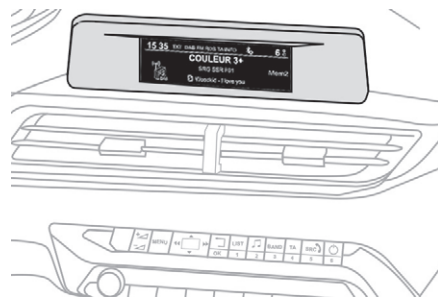
(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)



If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Monochrome screen C Displays



Depending on the context, it displays:

- time,
- date,
- exterior temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- visual parking sensor information,
- audio source being listened to,
- telephone or hands-free kit information,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

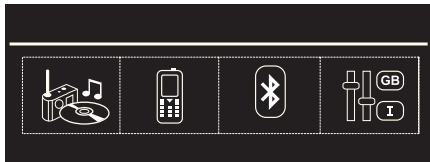
Controls



From the audio system control panel, press:

- ☞ the **"MENU"** button to access the **main menu**,
 - ☞ the **"▲"** or **"▼"** buttons to scroll through the items in the screen,
 - ☞ the **"◀"** or **"▶"** buttons to change a setting value,
 - ☞ the **"OK"** button to confirm,
- or
- ☞ the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- ☞ Press the **MENU** button:
 - "Multimedia",
 - "Telephone",
 - "Connections",
 - "Personalisation-configuration".
- ☞ Press the **"◀"** or **"▶"** button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (Frequency search (RDS), DAB/FM auto tracking, Radio Text (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).

For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Telephone" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call, view the calls log or the various telephone directories.

For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Connections" menu



With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be paired and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).

For more information on the "Connections" application, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows the activation or deactivation of the following equipment, depending on version:

- **"Access to the vehicle"**:
 - "Remote control action".

For more information on the **Remote control** and driver door selective unlocking in particular, refer to the "Access" section.

- **"Comfort"**:
 - "Rear wipe in reverse gear".

For more information on the **Wipers**, refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section.

- "Parking sensors".

For more information on the **Parking sensors**, refer to the "Driving" section.

- "Fatigue Detection System".
For more information on the **Fatigue detection system**, refer to the "Driving" section.
- **"Driving assistance"**:
 - "Auto. emergency braking".
For more information on the **Active Safety Brake**, refer to the "Driving" section.
 - "Speed recommendation".
For more information on **Speed limit recognition**, refer to the "Driving" section.
 - "Tyre inflation".
For more information on **Under-inflation detection** and reinitialisation in particular, refer to the "Driving" section.

Choice of language

This menu allows selection of the language used by the screen and the instrument panel.

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".

Adjusting the date and time

- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press OK.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press OK.
- ☞ Press the "◀" or "▶" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing OK, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.
- ☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the OK button.
- ☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the OK button to select the OK box and confirm or the Back button to cancel.

This system gives access to:

- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice),
 - the heating/air conditioning controls,
 - menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
 - audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
 - the display of visual parking aids (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.),
 - Internet services and the display of associated information.
- and, depending on equipment, allows:
- access to the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.

Touch screen

! As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations that require sustained attention with the vehicle stationary.
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.

Use is possible in all temperatures.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.

Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Principles

Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Some menus may display across two pages: press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate or activate a function, select **"OFF"** or **"ON"**.



Use this button to adjust the settings for a function.



Use this button for access to additional information on the function.



Use this button to confirm.



Use this button to return to the previous page.

Menus



i-Cockpit Amplify function.

Allows a driving ambience to be personalised.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.



Radio Media.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Air conditioning.

Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Semi-automatic mono-zone air conditioning** and **Automatic dual-zone air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.



Connected Navigation or Mirror Screen*.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Vehicle or Driving*.

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: **"Vehicle settings"** and **"Driving functions"**.



Telephone.

See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.



Applications.

Allows direct access to certain **i-Cockpit Amplify** functions (scented air freshener, etc.).

For more information on the **Scented air freshener**, refer to the corresponding section. For the other functions, refer to the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

* Depending on equipment.

i You can also press with three fingers on the touch screen to display the menu carousel.



Volume adjustment/mute.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Upper bar

Certain information is always displayed in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Repeat of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Summary of information from the **Radio Media, Telephone** menus and navigation instructions*.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

* Depending on equipment

Vehicle/Driving menu

"Vehicle settings" tab

PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Families	Functions
 "Driving lighting"	- "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of cornering lighting.
 "Vehicle access"	- "Remote control action: Unlock driver's door": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking at the tailgate. - "Motorised tailgate": activation/deactivation of motorised operation of the tailgate. - "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate access system.
 "Comfort lighting"	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear. - "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic door mirror tilt when engaging reverse gear. - "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting. - "Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.
 "Safety"	- "Distance alert": activation/deactivation of the distance alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit sign recognition. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.

PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Families	Functions
 "Headlamps"	- "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of cornering lighting. - "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.
 "Vehicle access"	- "Unlock driver's door": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking at the tailgate. - "Motorised tailgate": activation/deactivation of motorised operation of the tailgate. - "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate access system.
 "Comfort"	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear. - "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic door mirror tilt when engaging reverse gear. - "Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.
 "Safety"	- "Distance alert": activation/deactivation of the distance alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit sign recognition. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.

i For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

"Driving functions" tab

Function	Comment
"Adjusting Speeds"	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter or programmable cruise control.
"Under-inflation initialisation"	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.
"Lane departure warning system"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Lane assist"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Parking sensors"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Park Assist"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Automatic headlamp dip"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Stop & Start"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Blind spot sensors"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"Panoramic visual aid"	Activation of the Visiopark 2 function.
"Traction control"	Activation/deactivation of the function.

i For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Settings

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below.

Button	Comments
	Selection of a topic.
	Audio settings (sound ambience, distribution, level, voice volume, ringer volume).
	Switch off the screen.
OPTIONS	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel

Button	Comments
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of display language on the touch screen and digital instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time. Option of synchronisation with GPS.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Choice of the type of information displayed in the digital instrument panel.

PEUGEOT Connect Radio



The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below.

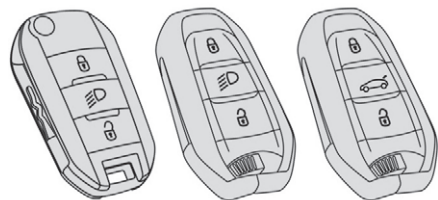
Button	Comments
	Turn off the screen (black screen). To return to the current screen, press the black screen or one of the menu buttons.
	Adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel ambient lighting.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
	Activation and configuration of the settings for the Wi-Fi.

Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of display language on the touch screen and digital instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time.
	Choice of the type of information displayed in the digital instrument panel.

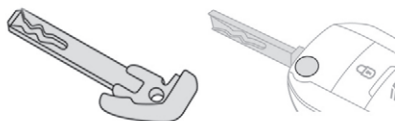
Remote control

General information



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

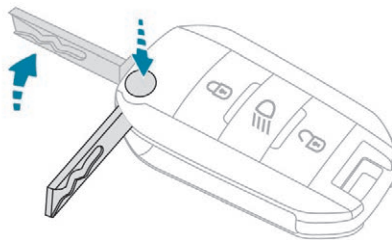
- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- unlocking – opening/closing the boot,
- turning the lighting on,
- folding/unfolding the door mirrors,
- activating/deactivating the alarm,
- opening the windows,
- closing the windows and the sunroof,
- locating the vehicle,
- vehicle immobiliser.



The key, integral with the remote control, can be used for the following functions, depending on version:

- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- turning the mechanical child lock on or off,
- activating/deactivating the front passenger airbag,
- back-up door locking,
- switching on the ignition and starting/switching off the engine.

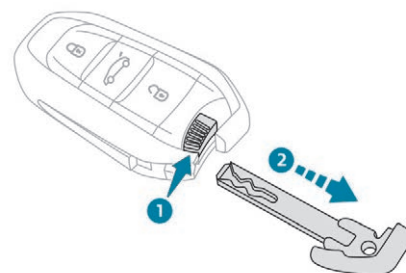
Ejecting the key



Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Press this button; the key is ejected from its housing.

To avoid damaging the mechanism, first press this button to fold it.



Version with Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Pull on this button to remove the key from the housing.

To return it to the housing, first pull on this button.

Unlocking the vehicle

Complete unlocking



- ☞ Press this button.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel flap

The setting is done in the vehicle configuration menu.



- ☞ Press this button.
- ☞ To unlock the other doors and the boot, press this button again.

On the first press of the unlocking button, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- complete or selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
 - deactivation of the alarm for other versions.
- Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Opening the windows



Depending on version, pressing and holding the unlocking buttons opens the windows to the desired position. The windows stop when you release the button.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ Press this button.

On the first press of the locking button, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds indicates:

- locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
 - activation of the alarm for other versions.
- Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

i An access that is not properly closed (door or tailgate) prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if your vehicle has an alarm, this will be fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the alarm was previously activated, it will be reactivated automatically.

i The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors with the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Deadlocking



☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

For versions without an alarm, deadlocking is confirmed by illumination of the direction indicators for few seconds on the second press of the locking button.

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Closing the windows and sunroof



Maintaining pressure on the locking button allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position. This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof. If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partly open, you must first deactivate the volumetric alarm protection. For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and door mirror spot lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Welcome lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



☞ Make a short press on this remote control button.

The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lighting immediately.

Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

The settings for the selective tailgate unlocking and motorised operation are made in the vehicle configuration menu.

By default, selective tailgate unlocking is activated and the motorised function is deactivated.



☞ Make a long press on the button to unlock the boot and trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate.

The doors and fuel filler flap remain locked.

i If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the unlocking button unlocks the whole vehicle.

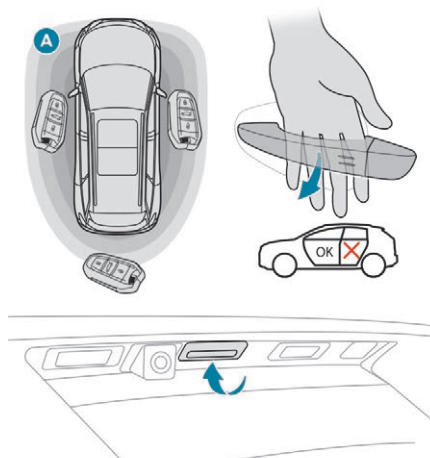
i If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the unlocking button releases the tailgate. To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

Keyless Entry and Starting

System that allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while keeping the electronic key in the recognition zone.

i The electronic key can also be used as a remote control. For more information on the operation of the **Remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.

Unlocking the vehicle



Complete unlocking

- ☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors or press the tailgate opening control (located in the centre).

If motorised operation of the tailgate is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

Opening the windows

Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or maintaining the press on the tailgate control allows the windows to be opened to the desired position.

Flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking

Driver's door and fuel flap

- ☞ Pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- ☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind the front passenger door handle with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate

opening control (located in the centre) with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

The setting for selective unlocking of the driver's door is managed in the vehicle configuration menu.

When unlocking the driver's door, flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the selective unlocking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- the deactivation of the alarm for other versions.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

Selective unlocking of the tailgate

- ☞ Press the tailgate opening control to unlock just the boot.

The doors remain locked.

- ! If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the doors.



Activation or deactivation of selective unlocking of the tailgate is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- ! If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

- ! If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and there is then no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

- ! The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

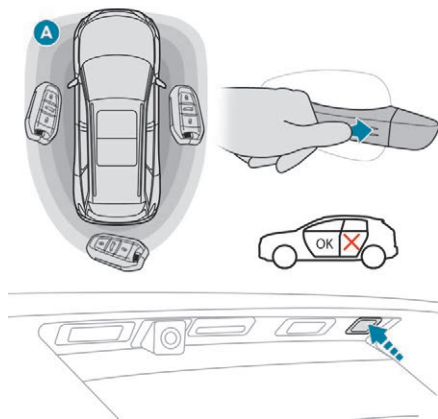
- ! As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

! In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.

For more information on starting with **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking



☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press with your finger or thumb on the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right).

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

Closing the windows and sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.

This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- activation of the alarm for other versions.

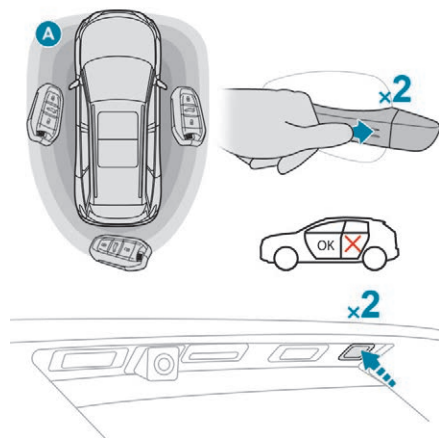
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

! For safety and theft protection reasons, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it with you.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the interior central locking button on the dashboard.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.
At the second press, illumination of the
direction indicators for a few seconds signals
the deadlocking of the vehicle for versions
without an alarm.

- ☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press with your finger or thumb on the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings) or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right).
- ☞ Within five seconds, press one of these locking controls again to deadlock the vehicle.

At the first press on one of the locking controls, illumination of the direction indicators for a few seconds signals:

- the locking of the vehicle for versions without an alarm,
- the activation of the alarm for other versions.

! Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. The remote control may stop working and need to be reinitialised.

The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.

As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

For vehicles with an ignition switch, do not forget to remove the key and turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.



Do not throw away the remote control batteries, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Back-up procedures

Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- remote control cell battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

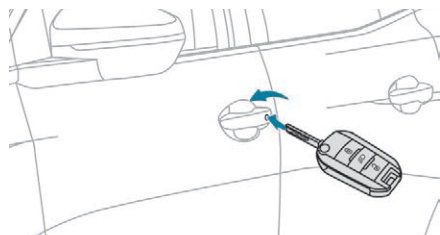
In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.

Refer to the corresponding section.

In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding section.

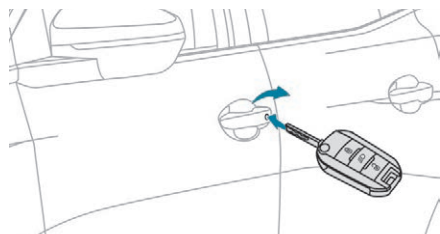
Unlocking



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
 - ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle.
- For versions without an alarm, the unlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
- Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

i If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

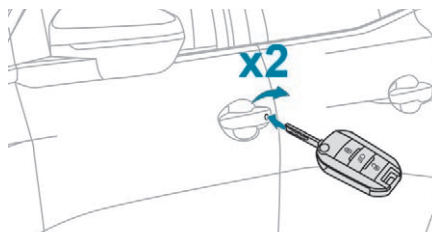
Normal locking



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
 - ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle.
- For versions without an alarm, the locking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.
- Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

i If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

Deadlocking



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock barrel.
 - ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it.
 - ☞ Within five seconds, turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle again to deadlock it.
- For versions without an alarm, at the second

manoeuvre the deadlocking is confirmed by flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

Without central locking

These procedures should be used in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

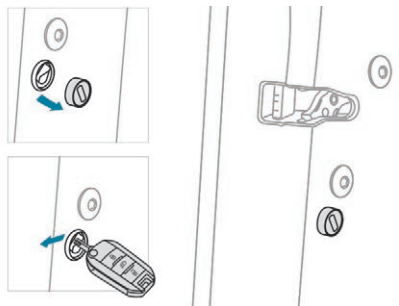
Driver's door

- ☞ Turn the key towards the rear of the vehicle to lock it, or towards the front to unlock it.

Passenger doors

Unlocking a door

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control for the door.

Locking

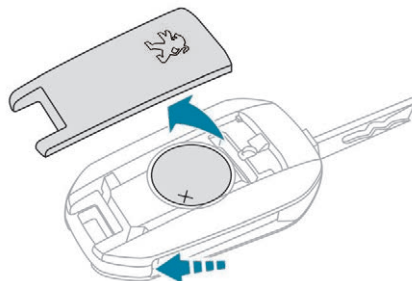
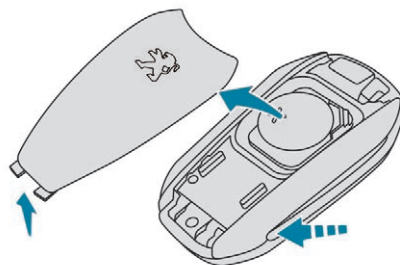
- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

Refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Remove the black cap on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ☞ Without forcing, insert the key into the aperture; then, without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

Changing the battery

A message is displayed on the instrument panel screen when replacement of the battery is needed.

Version without Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery type: CR1620/3 volts.**Version with Keyless Entry and Starting**
Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.

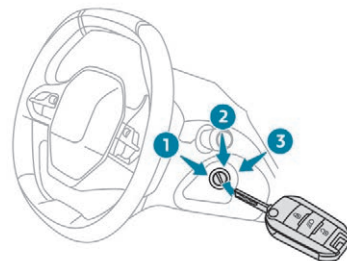
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

The remote control must be reinitialised after replacing the battery.

For more information on reinitialising the remote control, refer to the corresponding section.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

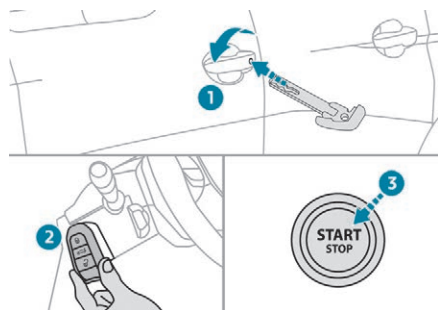
Version without Keyless Entry and Starting

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.

- ☞ Press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

Version with Keyless Entry and Starting



- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- ☞ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- ☞ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ☞ **With an automatic gearbox**, select position **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.

- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.

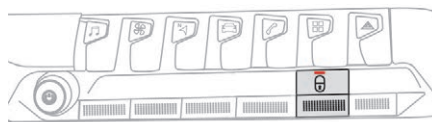
The electronic key is now fully operational again.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Central locking

This function allows the doors and boot to be locked or unlocked simultaneously from inside the vehicle.

Manual mode



Locking



- ☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.
- The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, the central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking



- ☞ Press this button again to unlock the vehicle.
- The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the red indicator lamp flashes and the button is inactive.

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- ☞ After deadlocking, it is necessary to use the remote control, Keyless Entry and Starting or the integral key to unlock the vehicle.

Automatic mode

This is the automatic central locking of the vehicle when driving, also called anti-intrusion security.

For more information on **Anti-intrusion security**, refer to the corresponding section.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

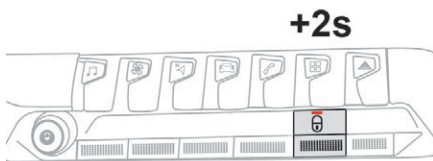


This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

i Carrying long or voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear. Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle. Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

Activation/Deactivation



You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.



With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal is triggered and a corresponding message of confirmation is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.



Driving with the doors locked may render access for the emergency services difficult in an emergency.

Alarm

(Depending on version)

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet, etc.

- volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

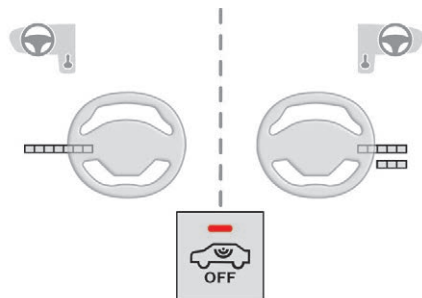
The system checks for the putting out of service of its components. The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.



For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation



- ☞ Turn the ignition off and exit the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is active: the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

i Following a vehicle locking request, the perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

i If an opening (door, boot or bonnet) is not fully closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.
- or
- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is also reactivated automatically.

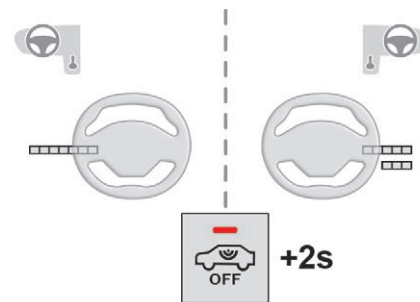
Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,

- leaving a window or sunroof partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds, press the button until the red indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

i To be effective, the deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

- ☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

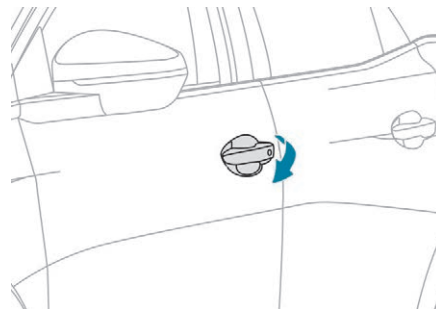
Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a malfunction of the system. Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Doors

Opening

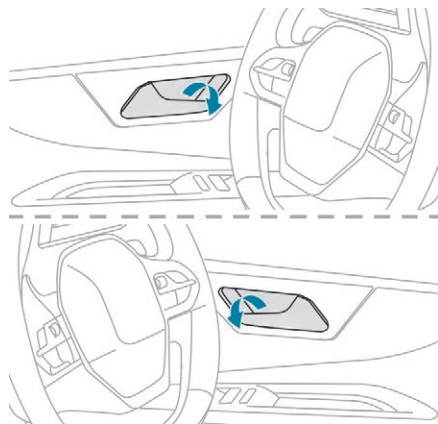
From outside



- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.

From inside



- ☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

- i** With the selective unlocking activated:
- opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked),
 - opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Closing

When a door is not closed correctly:

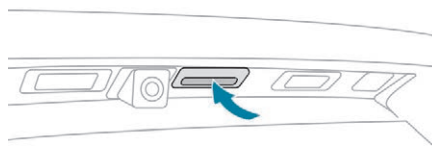


- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message displayed for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, an audible signal sounds for a few seconds.

Boot

Opening the tailgate

With the exterior tailgate control



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

- i** When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

- !** The tailgate is not designed to take a bicycle carrier.

Closing the tailgate

- ☞ Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- ☞ Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

If the tailgate is not properly closed:



- **engine running**, this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel for a few seconds,
- **vehicle moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

- !** In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, get it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

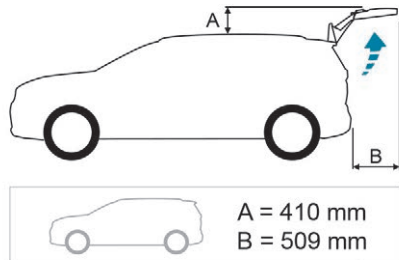
- i** In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

Hands-free tailgate

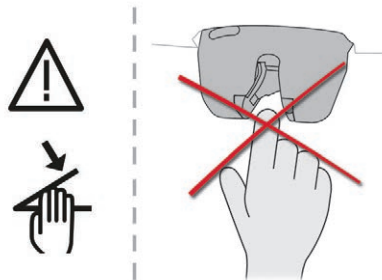
General points

The motorised operation of the tailgate can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings menu.

The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



- !** Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



- !** Never introduce a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate – Risk of a serious injury!

Safety anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.

Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

- !** To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:

- ensure that there is no person close to the rear of the vehicle,
- watch the activity of your passengers, particularly any children.

Bicycle carrier/Towbar

The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on a towbar with connection of a cable to the towbar socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

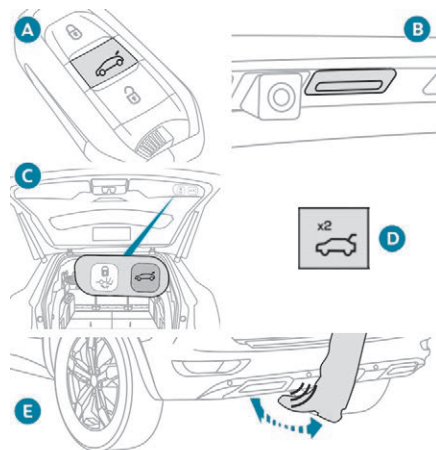
If using a towbar or bicycle carrier not recommended by PEUGEOT, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

Motorised operation



Activation/deactivation of the motorised operation of the tailgate is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

- A. using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system,
- B. using the exterior tailgate control,
- C. using the interior tailgate control,
- D. using the control on the dashboard,
- E. using the "hands-free access" procedure below the rear bumper.

Opening/Closing

- ☞ Press and hold the central button **A** of the electronic key.

or

- ☞ Press the exterior tailgate control **B** with the electronic key on your person.
- or
- ☞ Press the interior tailgate control **C** (closing only).
- or
- ☞ Press twice in succession on the dashboard control **D**.
- or
- ☞ With the electronic key on your person, use the "hands-free" access **E** by performing a "kicking" movement below the rear bumper. The command is confirmed by an audible signal.

i The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand. If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate. The request to open the tailgate with one of the controls **A**, **B** or **E** enables you to unlock the vehicle or the tailgate alone beforehand, if selective unlocking of the boot is activated. Closing the tailgate with the "hands-free" access function enables you to lock the vehicle.

i At any point, it is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate. Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway. Following the interruption of a movement, pressing one of these controls again reverses the movement.

Hands-Free Tailgate Access

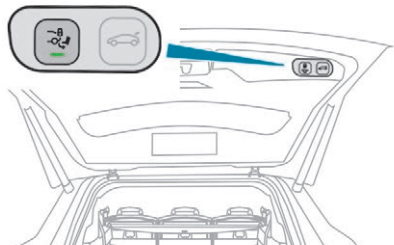


Activation and deactivation of the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

This function is deactivated by default.

! Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the quick foot movement. Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot – Risk of burns!

Automatic locking using the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function



To activate automatic locking of the vehicle when closing the tailgate using the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function:



- ☞ press this button; its green indicator lamp will come on.

Pressing this button again deactivates the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

Memorising an opening position

To limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- ☞ open the tailgate to the desired position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Memorisation of the maximum opening position of the tailgate is confirmed by an audible signal.

To cancel the memorised position:

- ☞ stop the tailgate in an intermediate position,
- ☞ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Cancellation of the memorised position is confirmed by an audible signal.

Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.

The tailgate must be immobile.

When opening and closing a motorised tailgate manually, there is no assistance from gas struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

- i** Repeatedly opening and closing of the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.

Allow at least 10 minutes for the electric motor to cool down before operating the tailgate again.

If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement – after detection of an obstacle, connecting or recharging the battery, etc.

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Fully close the tailgate manually.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Precautions in use

i In wintry conditions

In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before commanding a motorised opening of the tailgate.

The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

i When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

Recommendations related to the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function

If several kicking movements to operate the tailgate have no effect, wait a few seconds before trying again.

The function automatically deactivates in heavy rain or following a build-up of snow.

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic pollution (smartphone, etc.).

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

The function may not work correctly if your vehicle is fitted with a towbar.

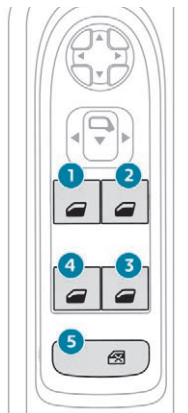
In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly if:

- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,
- you are washing your vehicle,

- your vehicle is being serviced,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function.

Electric windows



1. Front left.
2. Front right.
3. Rear right.
4. Rear left.
5. Deactivating the electric window switches located at the rear seats.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the resistance point. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the resistance point: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

i The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

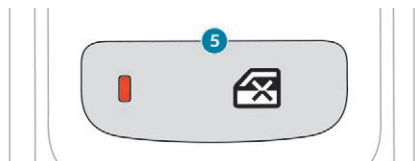
Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second

after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows



For your children's safety, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their positions.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation of the system. It remains on for as long as the deactivation is maintained.

Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The safety anti-pinch function is not active during these operations.

For each window:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres each time. Perform the operation until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

! In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned. When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows.

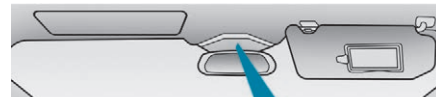
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

Panoramic opening sunroof

The panoramic sunroof and its blind are opened and closed using the buttons in the roof console.



A. Blind control button.

B. Sunroof control button.

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the fixed or mobile glass of the sunroof.

Principles

Complete opening of the sunroof involves partly raising the mobile glass, then sliding it over the fixed glass.

Any intermediate position is possible.

Opening the roof involves opening the blind. By contrast, the blind can remain open when the roof is closed.

The control buttons for the sunroof and blind can be used:

- with the ignition on, if the state of charge of the battery is adequate,
- with the engine running,
- in STOP mode with Stop & Start,
- during the 45 seconds after switching off the ignition,
- during the 45 seconds after locking the vehicle.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement.

Operating the sunroof

Opening



With the sunroof fully closed or partly raised:

- ☞ press and release the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to fully raise the sunroof.

With the sunroof opened beyond the raised position:

- ☞ press and release the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to open the sunroof.

With the sunroof partly or fully closed:

- ☞ press beyond the point of resistance and release the rear of button **B** to fully open the sunroof.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

- ☞ Press and hold the rear of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance; the sunroof opens and stops when you release the button.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before opening.
Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice – Risk of damage!
Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice.

! Do not extend your head or arms through the open sunroof when driving – Risk of serious injury!

Closing



With the sunroof partially or fully open:

- ☞ press beyond the point of resistance and release the front of button **B** to fully close the sunroof.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

With the sunroof partially or fully open:

- ☞ press and release the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to close the sunroof to its raised position.
- ☞ press and release the front of button **B** again to fully close the sunroof.

With the sunroof fully or partly raised:

- ☞ press and release the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the sunroof.
- ☞ press and hold the front of button **B** without going beyond the point of resistance; the sunroof closes and stops when you release the button.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

The anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof, the opening sunroof must be reinitialised:

- ☞ press the rear of button **B** until the sunroof is fully open,
- ☞ press and hold the rear of button **B** again for at least 3 seconds.

! Check the condition of the sunroof seals regularly (presence of dust or deposits, dead leaves, etc.).

If using a car wash, check that the roof is correctly closed in advance and keep the tip of the high-pressure lance at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

Operating the sunroof blind

The closing movement of the blind is limited by the position of the opening sunroof: the blind cannot be further forward than the front of the mobile glass.

Opening



☞ Press the rear of button **A** going beyond the point of resistance to fully open the blind.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

- ☞ Press and hold the rear of button **A** without going beyond the point of resistance; the blind opens and stops when you release the button.

Closing



☞ Press the front of button **A**, going beyond the point of resistance to fully close the blind.

Any new action on this button interrupts the movement.

- ☞ Press and hold the front of button **A** without going beyond the point of resistance; the blind closes and stops when you release the button.

Anti-pinch system

If the blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the blind, the blind must be reinitialised:

- ☞ press the rear of button **A** until the blind is fully open,
- ☞ press and hold the rear of button **A** again for at least 3 seconds.

i During simultaneous closing of the sunroof and the blind, if the blind catches up with the sunroof, the blind then suspends its movement and automatically resumes when the sunroof stops.

i When locking the vehicle, pressing and holding the locking button simultaneously closes the windows and the sunroof and then the blind. The movements are interrupted when you release the locking button.

! Never leave the electronic key inside the vehicle if you get out of the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of contact (pinching) when closing the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind. To do this, press the control button in question.

The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind.

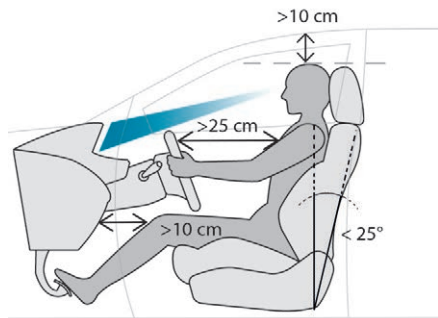
Driving position

Adopting a good driving position helps improve your comfort and protection. It also optimises interior and exterior visibility as well as access to controls.

Sitting comfortably

Whether or not your vehicle has certain seat adjustments described in this section depends on the trim level and country of sale.

Driver's side



Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest.

The cushion height should be set so your eyes are looking at the centre of the windscreen. The head room should be at least 4 in (10 cm). Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so you can fully press the pedals with legs slightly flexed.

The knee room should be at least 4 in (10 cm) from the dashboard for access to the dashboard controls.

Adjust the backrest angle to as vertical a position as possible; never tilt it more than 25°. Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

Adjust the length of the seat cushion to support your thighs.

Adjust the lumbar support so that it conforms to the shape of your spine.

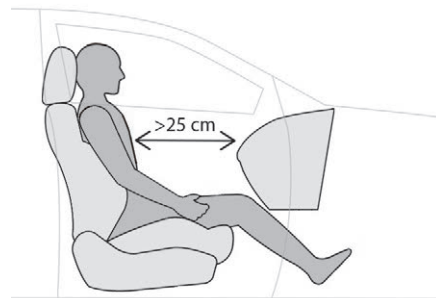
Adjust the steering wheel so that it is at least 10 in (25 cm) from your sternum and your arms are slightly bent.

The steering wheel should not hide the instrument panel.

! As a safety precaution, adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

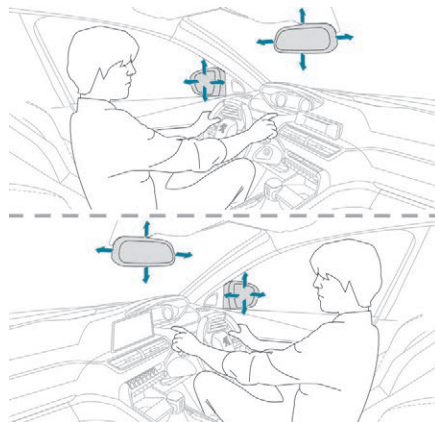
i If your vehicle has electric seats, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

Passenger's side

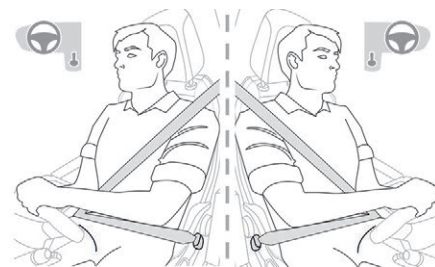


Sit fully back in the seat with your pelvis, back and shoulders in contact with the seat backrest. Adjust the longitudinal position of the seat so that you are at a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) from the dashboard. Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is level with the top of your head.

Before moving off



Adjust the interior and exterior door mirrors to reduce blind spots.

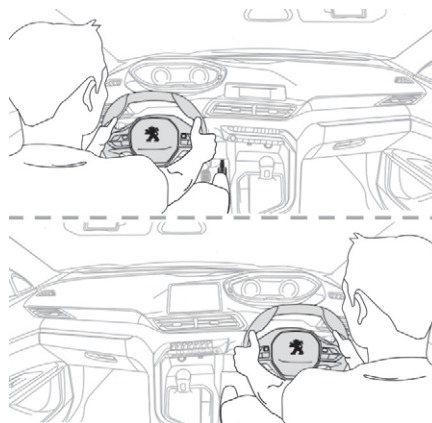


Fasten your seat belt: place the diagonal belt in the middle of your shoulder and adjust the lap

belt so that it is tightened across your pelvis. Ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.

i If your vehicle has electric door mirrors, the ignition must be on to adjust them.

When driving

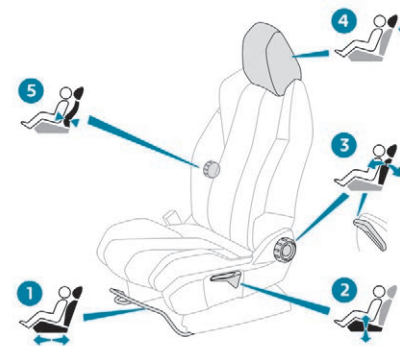


Maintain a good driving position and hold the steering wheel with both hands at the quarter to three position, so that you can easily and quickly reach the controls behind and near the steering wheel.

! Never adjust the seats or steering wheel when driving.
Always keep your feet on the floor.

Front seats

Manual seats



1. Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards
 ☞ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
 ☞ Release the bar to lock the seat in position in one of the notches.

2. Adjusting the height of the seat cushion

- ☞ Raise or lower the control as many times as needed to obtain the desired seat height.

3. Adjusting the seat backrest angle

- ☞ Turn the knob forwards or backwards to recline the backrest to the desired angle.

or

- ☞ For a passenger seat that can be placed in the table position, pull the handle and guide the backrest forwards or backwards.

4. Adjusting the height of the head restraint

Refer to the corresponding section.

5. Adjusting the lumbar support

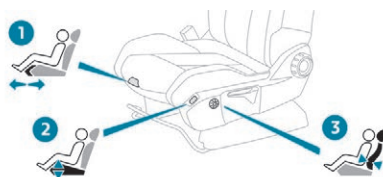
(only on the driver's seat)

- ☞ Turn the knob forwards or backwards to increase or decrease the level of lumbar support.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

"AGR" certified seats

Additional adjustments



1. Adjusting the length of the seat cushion

- ☞ Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the seat cushion forwards or backwards.

2. Adjusting the seat cushion angle electrically

- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to raise or lower the front of the seat cushion.

3. Adjusting the lumbar support electrically

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

Placing the passenger seat in the table position

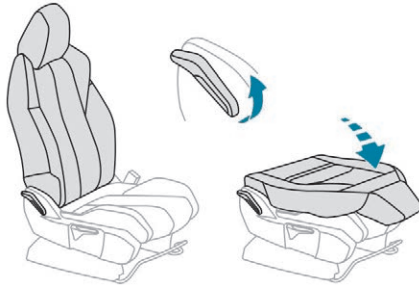
The backrest of the passenger seat can be fully folded forward and secured in this position. This function, when associated with folding of the backrest of the rear seats, helps in transporting long and voluminous objects.

First steps:

- ☞ lower the head restraint,
- ☞ straighten the "Aircraft" type table,
- ☞ move the seat fully back to allow space for the head restraint when folding,
- ☞ adjust the seat to the lowest position,
- ☞ check that there is nothing that might interfere with folding of the backrest (seat belt, child seat, items of clothing, bags, etc.).

i Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is recommended.

Folding the backrest



- ☞ Pull the control fully up to release the backrest.
- ☞ Tip the backrest fully forward.

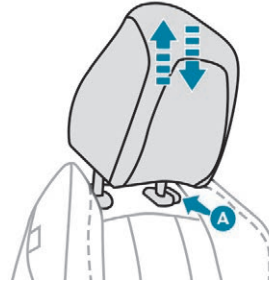
! In this position, the backrest can support a maximum load of **30 kg**. When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the folded backrest can turn into projectiles.

Returning the backrest to the normal position

- ☞ Pull the control fully up to release the backrest.
- ☞ Raise the backrest and guide it back until it latches into place.
- ☞ Check that the backrest has engaged correctly.

Front head restraints

Height adjustment



Upward:

- ☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downward:

- ☞ press the lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

i The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- ☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
- ☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

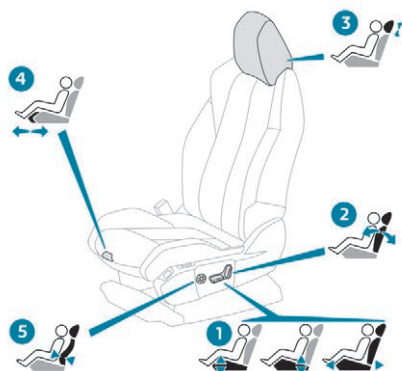
Refitting a head restraint

- ☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
- ☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
- ☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
- ☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Driver's seat with electric adjustment

i To carry out these electric adjustments, switch on the ignition or start the engine if the vehicle has gone into energy economy mode. These are accessible for approximately one minute after opening the driver's door. They are deactivated approximately one minute after switching off the ignition.



1. Adjusting the angle and height of the seat cushion/Adjusting the seat forwards and backwards

- ☞ Raise or lower the front of the control to obtain the desired seat cushion angle.
- ☞ Raise or lower the rear of the control to raise or lower the seat cushion.
- ☞ Slide the control forwards or backwards to move the seat forwards or backwards.

2. Adjusting the seat backrest angle

- ☞ Turn the control forwards or backwards to recline the backrest to the desired angle.

3. Adjusting the height of the head restraint

Refer to the corresponding section.

4. Adjusting the length of the seat cushion

- ☞ Pull the handle forwards to release the cushion, then move the front part of the seat cushion forwards or backwards.

5. Adjusting the lumbar support

The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.

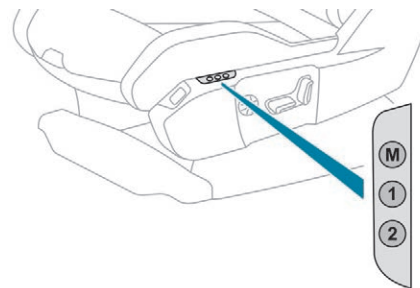
- ☞ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ☞ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Storing driving positions

Associated with adjustments of the electrical driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It takes account of the electric adjustments of the seat and the door mirrors.



Storing a position

Using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Sit in the driver's seat.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

i Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

i You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Heated seats

The function is active only with the engine running.



Switching on

- Press the button corresponding to your seat.

- Each press changes the level of heating; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on:

- 1 orange indicator lamp = low.
- 2 orange indicator lamps = medium.
- 3 orange indicator lamps = high.

Switching off

- Press the button again until all the indicator lamps are off.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use is not recommended for persons with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the system:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Multipoint massage

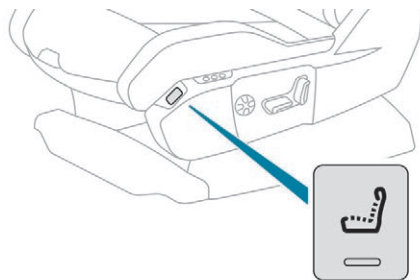
System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Activation/Settings

The massage settings are adjusted in the touch screen.

The system is switched on, either directly using the button on the front seat, or by activating a personalised ambience with the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.



Using the button on the front seat:



- ☞ Press this button; its green indicator lamp comes on.

The system is activated immediately with the last settings used and the settings page is displayed on the touch screen.

If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its previous state.



The multipoint massages are also managed by the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

If you want to modify the settings:

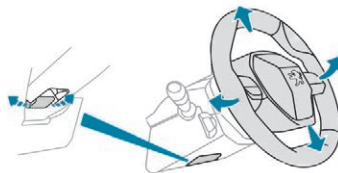
- ☞ select another type of massage from the five offered,
- ☞ select a massage intensity from the three levels offered: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).

The modifications are taken into account immediately.

Once activated, the system starts a one hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 3 minutes at rest.

The system stops automatically at the end of the cycle; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Steering wheel adjustment



- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.

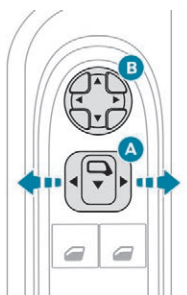
Demisting/Defrosting



If your vehicle is so equipped, demisting/defrosting of the heated door mirrors is performed when the heated rear screen is switched on.

For more information on **Rear screen demist - defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

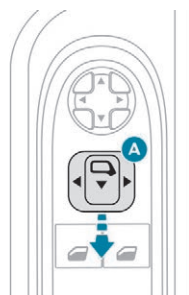
Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding



- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i If necessary the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

They return to their initial position:

- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear,
- once the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- on switching off the engine.

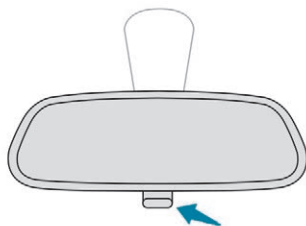


This function is activated/deactivated via the **Vehicle settings** tab in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles, etc.

Manual model



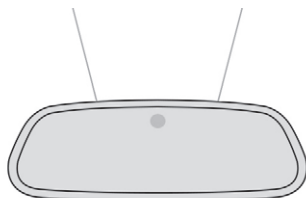
Adjustment

- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

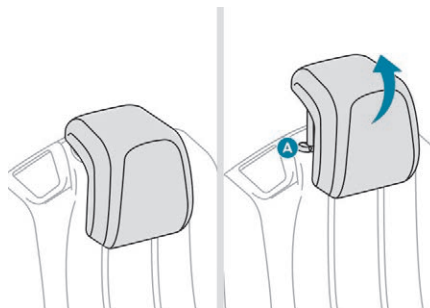


This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Second row seats

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
 - ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.

- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
 - ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

To refit a head restraint:

- ☞ insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

! Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.

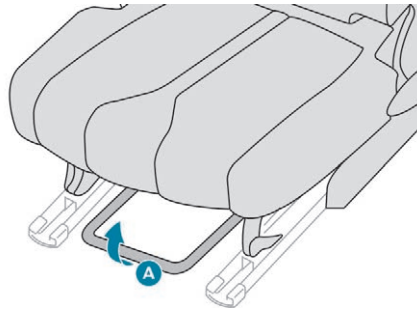
Seat adjustments

The three seats of the 2nd row are independent and have the same width. Their backrests can be folded to increase or reduce the boot loading space.



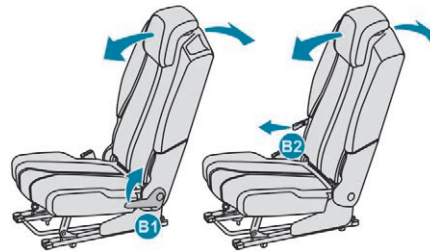
- A. Longitudinal adjustment
- B. Adjusting the seat backrest angle and folding
- C. Folding the backrest from behind and emergency exit for 3rd row passengers
- D. Access to 3rd row seats (7-seat versions)

Longitudinal adjustment



- ☞ Raise the control bar **A** and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ☞ Release the bar and ensure the seat is properly locked.

Adjusting the seat backrest angle



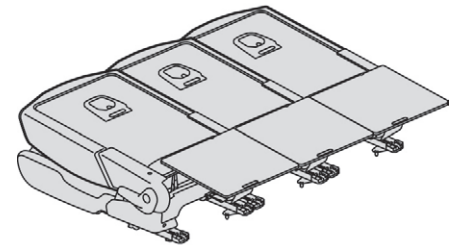
Outer seats

- ☞ Lift control handle **B1** and guide the backrest backwards or forwards, raising yourself slightly if needed.
- ☞ Release the handle and ensure the backrest is properly locked on one of the positions offered.

Central seat

- ☞ Lift control strap **B2** and guide the backrest backwards or forwards, raising yourself slightly if needed.
- ☞ Release the strap and ensure the backrest is properly locked on one of the positions offered.

Flat floor

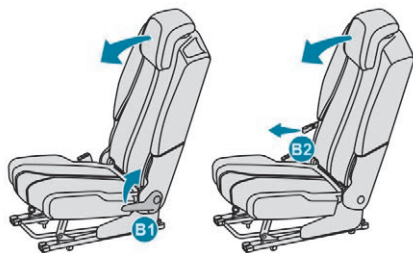


Folding the backrests

- ☞ Check that the "aircraft" type tables of the front seats are properly folded.
- ☞ Place the 2nd row seats in the maximum rear position.

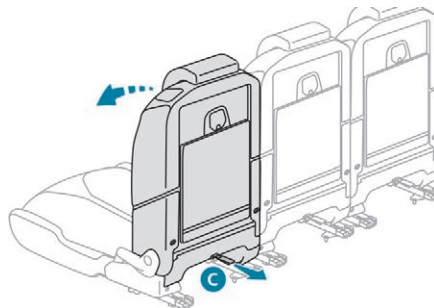
! Before and while performing operations on the seats, check that the passengers, children in particular, keep their hands and their feet far from the moving elements of the seats (hinges, slides, etc.) – Risk of serious injury!

Folding from the outside



- ☞ Pull the handle **B1** or the strap **B2** until the backrest is fully folded.
- ☞ Release the control.
- ☞ Push the backrest slightly forward so that the backrest tilts and the cushion is folded flat on the floor.

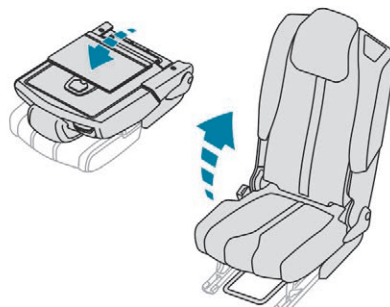
Folding from the boot



When loading, for example, or from the 3rd row seats:

- ☞ Pull strap **C** to unlock the desired seat and push the backrest slightly forward.

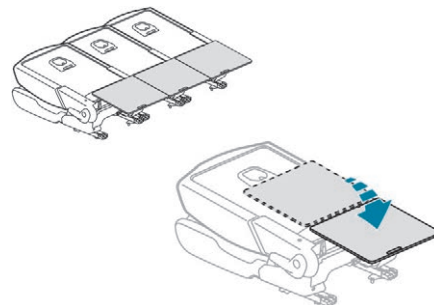
Replacing the seat



- ☞ Raise the continuity panels of the 2nd row seats against the backrests.
- ☞ Straighten the backrest until it locks.

! Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts, check that the outer belts are properly tensioned. The central belt must be stored in the headlining.

Continuity panels



Each seat has a continuity panel at the bottom of the backrest, which, once unfolded:

- allows for a continuous loading surface in the boot, whatever the position of the seats,

- prevents objects from sliding beneath the 2nd row seats.

The continuity panels are held against the backrests with a magnetic fixing element.

! These continuity panels are not designed to support a weight greater than **30 kg**.

i Before deploying the continuity panels, check that the 2nd row seats are pulled as far back as possible.

Access to third row seats

Third row seats are accessed via the second row outer seats.



From the outside or from the 3rd row seats:

- ☞ Check that the "aircraft" type tables of the front seats are properly folded.
- ☞ Pull lever **D** and guide the backrest forwards to tilt it and move the seat to the front.

To put the seat backrest back in place:

- ☞ Straighten the backrest until the seat locks. Whatever the initial position of the seat, it is placed automatically at one third of the longitudinal adjustment range in order to preserve enough space for passengers in the 3rd row seats.

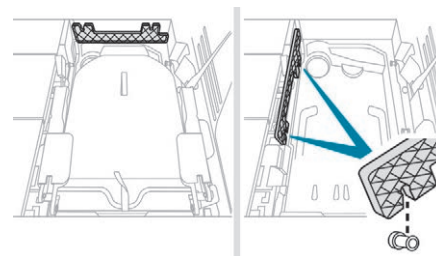
! If this system fails (lever **D**), the 3rd row passengers can also exit after having folded the backrest of the 2nd row seats using strap **C**. Do not let children operate the seats unsupervised.

Third row seats

The two seats in the 3rd row are stored in the folded away position at the back of the boot. Each is covered with a rigid concertina board attached to the vehicle.

! Do not let children operate the seats unsupervised.

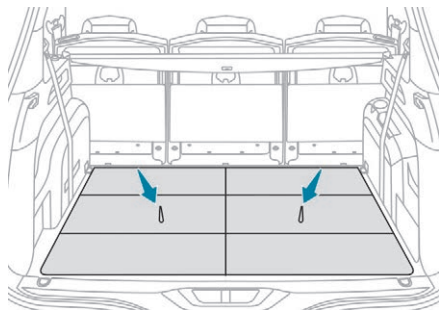
i Each concertina board can support a maximum load of **100 kg** with the 3rd row seats folded away. With the 3rd row seats removed and the removable concertina board carriers installed, the maximum load is limited to **40 kg**.



When there is a seat at the back of the boot, the removable carrier is fixed against the wall in front of its holder.

If you remove the seat from the back of the boot for extra storage space, you must place the removable carrier on the two lugs on the central wall.

Folding the concertina boards



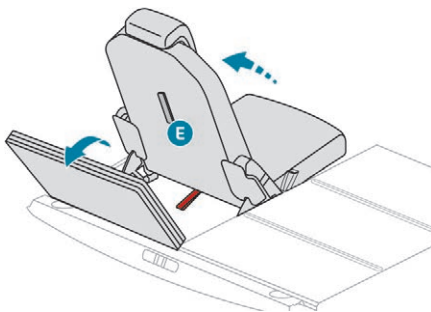
- ☞ Pull one of the straps; the 3 parts of the corresponding board fold into concertina form.

When the 3rd row seats are straightened, these folded concertina boards can be left:

- either flat behind the seats,
- or in the vertical position, thus clearing the inside of the seat as a storage space.

Installing the seats

This is done from the boot sill.



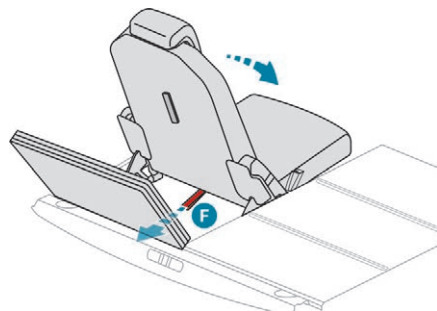
- ☞ Remove the load space cover.
- ☞ Straighten the continuity panels of the 2nd row seats.
- ☞ Fold back the concertina board and straighten it vertically.
- ☞ Pull the black strap E located behind the backrest.

The backrest tilts backwards bringing the seat cushion with it; the seat locks in the open position.

The load space cover can be stored behind the backrests of the seats in the 3rd row.

For more information on the **Interior fittings** and particularly on the load space cover, refer to the corresponding section.

Seat storage



- ☞ Straighten the continuity panels of the 2nd row seats.
- ☞ Put the head restraints in the low position.
- ☞ Check that the seat belts in the 3rd row are properly stored along the side trims without being folded or twisted.
- ☞ Pull strap F, located at the bottom of the backrest.

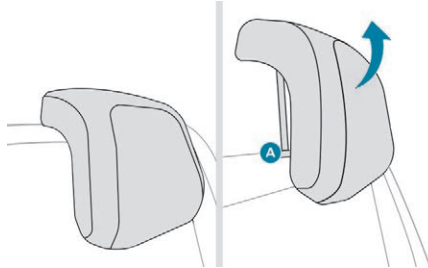
The seat is unlocked.

☞ Push the backrest slightly forwards. The backrest tilts and folds on the cushion; the folded seat is stored at the back of its storage area.

- ☞ Put the concertina boards back above the folded away seats.

- !** Before doing anything to the seats in the 3rd row, straighten the continuity panels of the seats in the 2nd row.
- Do not try to fold a seat in the 3rd row without having opened it until the backrest is fully locked.
- Do not leave anything on or underneath the seats in the 3rd row when they are being folded.
- Do not guide strap **F** when storing the seat – your fingers may get jammed!

Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- a **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
 - ☞ pull the head restraint fully up.
- a **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
 - ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it fully down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

To remove a head restraint:

- ☞ pull the head restraint as far up as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely,
- ☞ stow the head restraint.

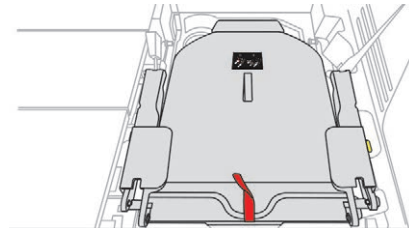
To refit a head restraint:

- ☞ insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest,
- ☞ push the head restraint down as far as it will go,
- ☞ press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

- !** Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are removed; they must be in place and in the high position.

Seat removal

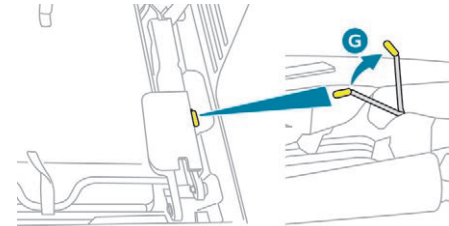
Removing the right-hand seat first is recommended in order to make it easier to access the left-hand seat unlocking control.



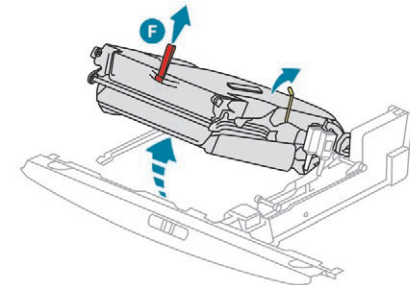
The seat must be in the folded away position.

These operations must be performed from the boot sill.

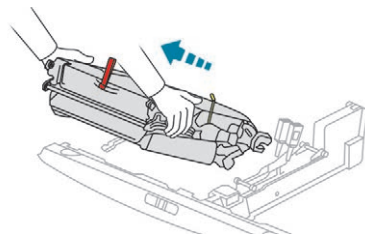
- ☞ Fold back the concertina board.



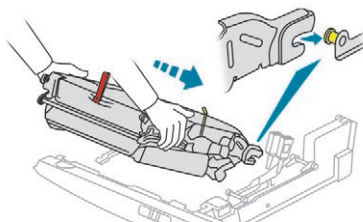
- ☞ Lift the yellow lever **G**, located on the right-hand side, as far as possible to unlock the seat.



- ☞ While keeping the yellow lever held at the highest position, raise the rear part of the seat using the red strap **F**.



- ☞ Once the rear part of the seat has been raised, take hold of each side of the cushion, at the plastic covers, then bring the seat towards you, keeping it at the same angle.



- ☞ While holding it by the sides at the plastic covers, tilt the seat forwards.
- ☞ Place the hooks located at the front of the seat, **both at the same time** onto the coloured securing lugs on the right and left at the bottom of the seat well.

- ☞ Drop the rear part of the seat which will lock in place under its own weight. The yellow lever **G** folds automatically.

! If the seat is not perfectly horizontal, **do not press on the backrest and do not try to unfold it** – Risk of damaging the mechanism!
Take out the seat and start the operation again.

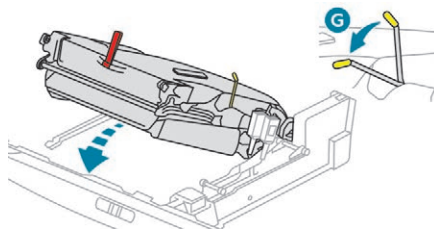
Replacing the seats

These operations must be performed from the boot sill.

- !** As long as the seat is not correctly in position, it must be held with both hands by the sides, keeping it folded.

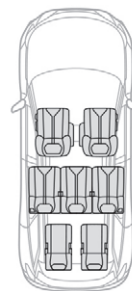
- ☞ Check in advance that the seat storage well is empty and that the movable carrier is properly secured against the front wall.

- !** Check that the front hooks of the seat are properly located on the two lugs. If they are not, you must lift the seat and start the procedure again.

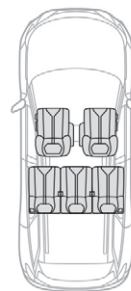


Seat modularity

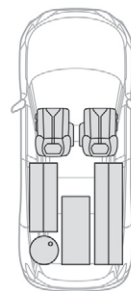
Configuration examples



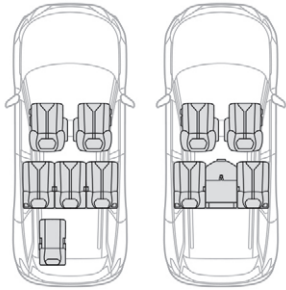
7 seats



5 seats



Transport of objects



6 seats

4 seats

By folding the 2nd row of seats and folding away the 3rd row of seats, you can create a continuous storage floor through to the back of the front seats.

By folding the front passenger seat into a table position, you can create a continuous storage floor through to the dashboard.

! Folding or unfolding the seats must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

i-Cockpit Amplify function

This function allows the driving ambiances to be managed.

Specific system settings are offered for each ambience.

These ambiances can be personalised in the touch screen.

Content of an ambience

An ambience is defined by the settings for each of the following systems:



- the passenger compartment ambient lighting, (activation/deactivation and adjustment of brightness)



- the audio ambience, (choice of predetermined settings for the audio system equaliser).



- scented air freshener, (activation/deactivation, choice of an air freshener and adjusting the amount of diffusion).



- multipoint massage, (selection of the seat, activation/deactivation, selection of a type of massage and a setting for intensity).



- Dynamic pack, (activation/deactivation).

Access to the i-Cockpit Amplify system home page



Direct access by this button



Access via the Applications menu



Select "i-Cockpit Amplify".

Activating an ambience

From the home page:

Select an ambience: "**Relax**" or "**Boost**".

Depending on the settings made for the ambience, the systems are activated immediately.

Deactivating an ambience

From the home page:

Press "**Deactivate ambience**".

or

Select another ambience.

The ambience is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Personalising an ambience

From the home page:

- ☞ Select an ambience to activate it.
- ☞ Press "**Settings**" to display the settings page for the ambience.
- ☞ Select a system for which you wish to modify the settings.
- ☞ After making the modifications, press any area of the screen outside the system settings window to return to the ambience settings page.
- ☞ After making all of the desired modifications to settings, press "**Save settings**".

The modifications are taken into account immediately.

i It is possible to temporarily modify an ambience at any time, by modifying the settings for one or more of the systems managed in the ambience, without going via the i-Cockpit Amplify function. For example, you can deactivate or modify the intensity of the current massage by pressing the massage activation button on your seat or activate/deactivate the ambient lighting in the passenger compartment from the **Vehicle/Driving** menu. In this case, the new settings will not be saved as part of the current ambience.

Heating and Ventilation

Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger and rear passengers, depending on the level of equipment.

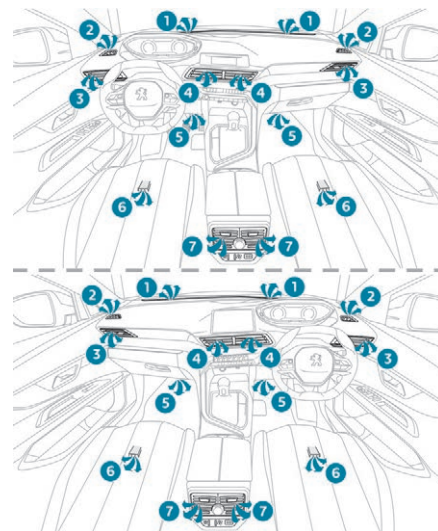
The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.

The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.

Depending on your vehicle, the controls are accessible in the **Air conditioning** menu of the touch screen or are grouped together on the control panel of the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.

6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.
7. Adjustable air vents with blower.

To close the air vents:

- ☞ side vents; place the slider in the central position, then move it sideways towards the door.
- ☞ central vents; place the slider in the central position, then move it sideways towards you.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly. We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.



If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.



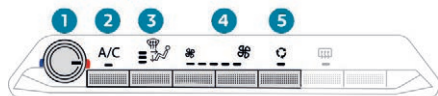
The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.



Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you may temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning



1. Temperature settings.
2. Air conditioning On/Off.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air flow adjustment.
5. Recirculation of interior air.

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.

Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn this knob from blue (cold) to red (hot).

Air distribution adjustment



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

☞ Press this button as many times as necessary to obtain the desired air distribution.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding orange indicator lamps.

Air flow adjustment



☞ Press the "**large fan**" or "**small fan**" button to increase or decrease the air flow.



The corresponding orange indicator lamps come on.

If you keep pressing the "**small fan**" until all of the indicator lamps go off (system off), the temperature is no longer controlled.
A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Air conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on



☞ Press this button; its orange indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off. To obtain cool air more quickly, you can activate recirculation of the interior air for a few moments.

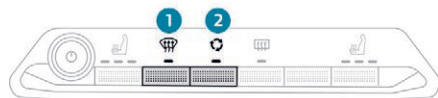
Switching off

A/C

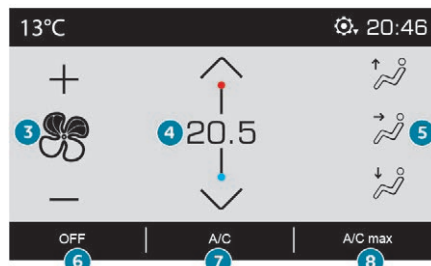
Press this button again; its indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Semi-automatic mono-zone air conditioning



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Air flow adjustment.
4. Temperature adjustment.
5. Air distribution adjustment.
6. System off.
7. Air conditioning On/Off.
8. Maximum air conditioning.

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.

The temperature at the nozzles and vents is regulated by the system according to the temperature in the passenger compartment and the temperature setting.

Temperature adjustment



Press one of these buttons to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

Air flow adjustment



Press one of these buttons to increase (+) or decrease (-) the speed of the booster fan.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.



Avoid driving too long without ventilation – Risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

These buttons are used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by using several buttons: illumination of the indicator lamp confirms the presence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated, the indicator lamp off indicates the absence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated.

For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

Air conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on

A/C ☞ Press this button, its indicator lamp comes on.

i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off. To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off

A/C ☞ Press this button again, its indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Maximum air conditioning

This function allows faster cooling of the air in the passenger compartment. The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, air distribution towards the centre and outer vents, air flow to maximum and activates recirculation of interior air.

A/C MAX ☞ Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function and return to the previous settings; its indicator lamp goes off.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on **Front demist - defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

Switching off the system

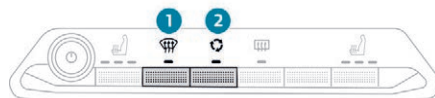
OFF ☞ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps of the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

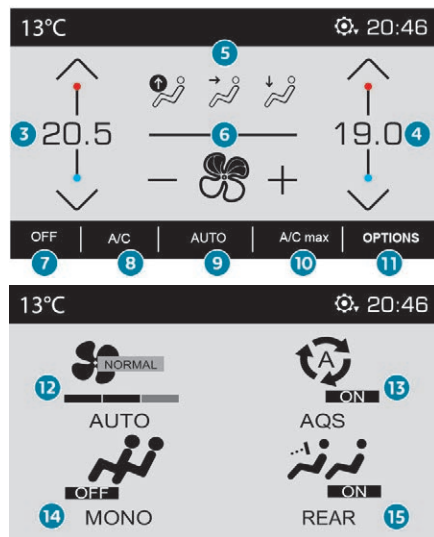
Temperature is no longer regulated. However, a slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for too long with the system switched off – Risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!
Pressing any button reactivates the system with the settings that were previously in use.

Automatic dual-zone air conditioning



Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Temperature adjustment on the left side.
4. Temperature adjustment on the right side.
5. Air distribution adjustment.
6. Air flow adjustment.
7. System off.
8. Air conditioning On/Off.
9. Automatic comfort programme On/Off.
10. Maximum air conditioning.
11. Access to the secondary page.
12. Selection of settings for the automatic comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast).
13. "AQS" (Air Quality System) function (with pollution sensor).
14. Mono-zone/Dual-zone.
15. "REAR" function (depending on version).

The air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each choose their own temperature setting.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

-  Press one of these buttons to increase the value.
-  Press one of these buttons to decrease the value.

It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3°C in the settings for left and right.

Automatic comfort programme

- AUTO**  Press this button to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to modulate the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of three settings offered in the secondary page, accessible from the **"OPTIONS"** button.

To change the current setting, shown by illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp, press this button repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed:



"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.



"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).



"Fast": provides strong and effective air flow.

Use the **"Normal"** or **"Fast"** setting to assure the comfort of passengers in the rear seats. This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator for the last setting remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if deactivated.

i In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system compensates automatically and corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

Automatic visibility programme

For more information on **Front demist – defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

"Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once it detects a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.

Recirculation is automatically activated when the front screenwash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

The function does not operate if the exterior temperature is below 5°C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.

To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by pressing the **"OPTIONS"** button.

Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more settings, while retaining automatic control of the other functions:

- air flow,
- air distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the **"AUTO"** button goes off.

AUTO  Press this button again to reactivate the automatic comfort programme.

Air flow adjustment



- Press one of these buttons to increase or decrease the speed of the booster fan.



The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

"OFF" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving too long without ventilation – Risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.



Windscreen and side windows.



Central and side vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

In **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons are off.

Air conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

Switching on



- Press this button, its indicator lamp comes on.



The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Switching off



- Press this button again, its indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Maximum air conditioning

This function allows faster cooling of the air in the passenger compartment.

The system automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, air distribution towards the centre and outer vents, air flow to maximum and activates recirculation of interior air.



- Press this button to activate the function; its indicator lamp comes on.

- Press this button again to deactivate the function and return to the previous settings; its indicator lamp goes off.

Mono-zone/Dual-zone

The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function).

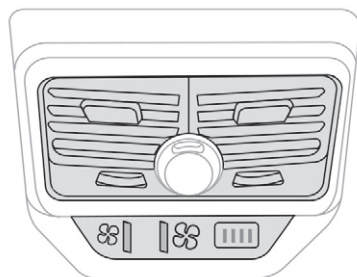
It is available in the secondary page by pressing the **"OPTIONS"** button.



- Press this button to activate the **"MONO"** function; its **"ON"** status is displayed.

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).

"REAR" function.



When this function is activated, the rear air vents blower starts up. In this case, the rear passengers can control the air flow from these air vents independently of the air conditioning air flow control for the front air vents. When the function is deactivated, the maximum air flow distributed by the rear air vents is limited by the air conditioning air flow setting for the front air vents. The function is available on the secondary page, which can be accessed by pressing the "OPTIONS" button.



☞ Press this button to activate the "REAR" function; its status is displayed as "ON".



☞ Press the "large fan" or "small fan" button to increase or decrease the air flow respectively.



The corresponding indicator lamps come on.

If all of the indicator lamps are off, a slight air flow can still be felt as a result of the vehicle's movement.

Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the air flow settings and the air distribution in the passenger compartment depending on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.

System switch-off

OFF

☞ Press this button. Its indicator lamp comes on and all other indicator lamps for the system go off.

This action deactivates all functions of the air conditioning system.

By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation. Temperature is no longer regulated. A slight air flow can still be felt however, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or the system deactivated – Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!
Pressing any button reactivates the system with the settings that were previously in use.

Recirculation of the interior air

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and the side windows.

The recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

This function also allows the desired temperature in the passenger compartment to be reached in the shortest time.



☞ Press this button to activate the function; its orange indicator lamp comes on.

☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function; its indicator lamp goes off.

! Avoid prolonged use of the recirculation of interior air – Risk of formation of mist and deterioration of the air quality!

i The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Front demist – defrost

With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Adjust the temperature to maximum (red).
- ☞ Adjust the air flow to maximum; all of the orange indicator lamps come on.
- ☞ Adjust the air distribution to the "Windscreen" position; its associated orange indicator lamp comes on.
- ☞ Check that the recirculation of interior air is deactivated; its indicator lamp must be off.
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the "A/C" button; its orange indicator lamp comes on.

i With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

With semi-automatic and automatic air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme



- ☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows more quickly; its orange indicator lamp comes on.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

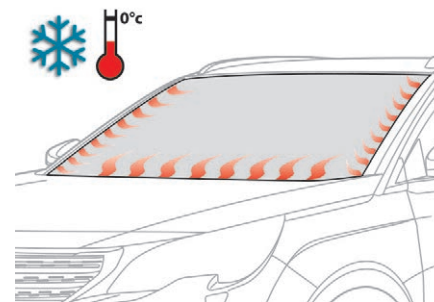
- ☞ To switch it off, press this button; its indicator lamp goes off.

The system allows the manual modification of air flow without causing automatic deactivation of the automatic visibility programme.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting – defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

! In wintry conditions, remove all snow or ice on the camera on the windscreen before moving off. Otherwise, this can affect the function of the equipment associated with the camera.

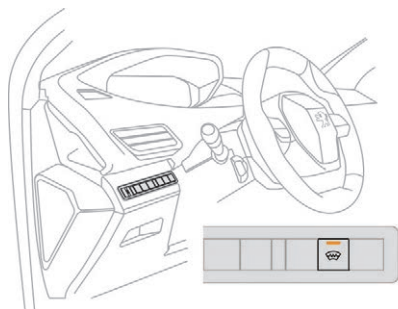
Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the areas alongside the windscreen pillars.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

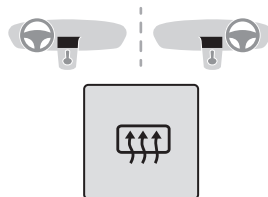
Switching on/off



☞ With the engine running, press this button; its orange indicator lamp comes on. The system is active if the exterior temperature is below 0°C.

☞ Pressing the button again switches off the system; its indicator lamp goes off. The system is automatically deactivated every time the engine is switched off.

Rear screen demist – defrost



Switching on



☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors.

The orange indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.



☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.



Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.



Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Programmable heating

The programmable heating operates independently of the engine.

With the engine off, it preheats the coolant circuit to ensure optimal engine operating temperature as soon as it is started up.

The programmable heating is switched on by the long range remote control. It may be immediate or deferred depending on the programming.



Always switch off the programmable heating when refuelling to avoid any risk of fire or explosion.

The programmable heating is supplied by the vehicle's fuel tank. Before use, ensure that there is enough fuel left in the tank. If the fuel in the tank is at the reserve level, we strongly recommend that you do not programme the heating.

To avoid the risks of poisoning or asphyxia, the programmable heating must not be used, even for short periods, in a closed environment such as a garage or workshop which are not equipped with an exhaust gas extraction system.

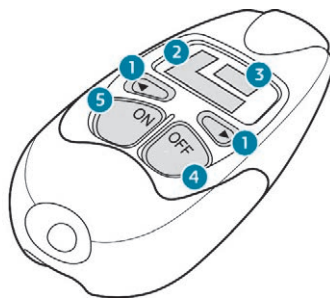
Do not park the vehicle on a flammable surface (dry grass, dead leaves, paper, etc.) – Risk of fire!

i The volumetric alarm movement detector may be disrupted by the programmable heating air flows when it is operating. To avoid any untimely triggering of the alarm when using the programmable heating, it is advisable that the volumetric monitoring is deactivated.

i Adapting the programmable heating enables you to use it to preheat the passenger compartment of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Presentation

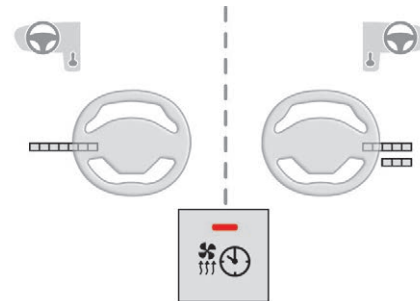
Remote control



1. Functions scrolling menu buttons.
2. Function symbols: clock, temperature, operating time, programmed time, heater operation, heating management.
3. Digital displays: time, temperature, operating time, programmed time or heating level.
4. Off button.
5. On button.

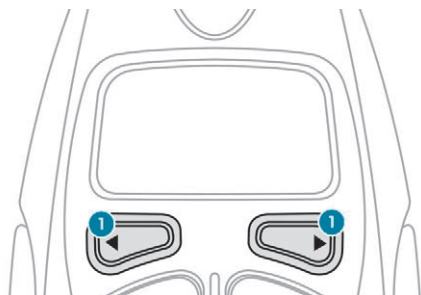
3

Operating indicator lamp



on red: deferred switching on programmed.
flashing red: heating on.
off: heating off.

Function display



☞ Press the buttons **1** several times to display the functions.

The first press on the left or right button displays the time.

Then, the left button is used to scroll to the programmed time then the heating level ("C1" to "C5").

The right button is used to scroll to the passenger compartment temperature then the heater operating time when immediately switched on.

i The passenger compartment temperature information is only available when the engine is off.

Setting the time



☞ After having displayed the time using the buttons **1**, press on buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

☞ Set the time with the buttons **1**.

☞ Press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5** to save it.



This symbol will be displayed.

Immediate switching on



☞ Press button **5** until the message "OK" is displayed.

When the signal has been received, the message "OK" is displayed along with the operating time.



The heater starts and this symbol is displayed.



This red indicator flashes during heating.

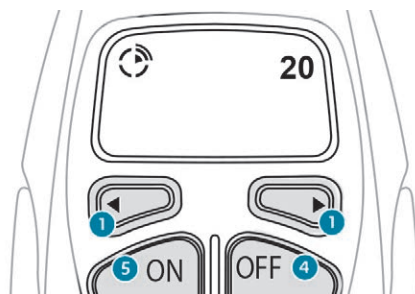
☞ To deactivate the function, press button **4** until the message "OK" is displayed.



This symbol and the indicator lamp will turn off.

i During these operations, if the message **"FAIL"** is displayed, it means that the signal has not been received. Restart the procedure after having changed position.

Adjusting the operating time



☞ Press the buttons **1** to display the operating time.



This symbol will be displayed.

☞ After having displayed the operating time, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

- ☞ Adjust the operating time by pressing buttons **1**: in 10 minute increments to a maximum of 30 minutes.
- ☞ Simultaneously press buttons **4** and **5** to save the operating time.

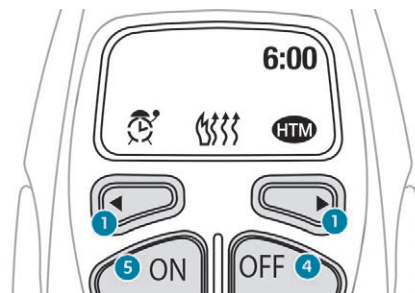


This symbol will be displayed.

i The factory value setting is 30 minutes.

Deferred switching on

You must programme your departure time for the system to automatically calculate the optimal time to start the heater.



Programming the departure time

☞ Press buttons **1** to display the programmed time.



This symbol will be displayed.

☞ After having displayed the programmed time, press buttons **4** and **5** simultaneously within 10 seconds.



This symbol will flash.

- ☞ Set the time by pressing buttons **1**.
- ☞ Simultaneously press buttons **4** and **5** to save it.



This symbol will be displayed.

Activation/Deactivation

☞ After having displayed the programmed time using buttons **1**, press button **5** until the message **"OK"** is displayed.



When the signal has been received, the message **"OK"** is displayed along with this symbol.



This red indicator lamps comes on until heating begins.



This symbol is displayed when the heater starts.



HTM: Heat Thermo Management

- ☞ To deactivate the programming, press button **4** until the message "OK" is displayed.



This symbol will disappear.



During these operations, if the message "FAIL" is displayed, it means that the signal has not been received. Restart the procedure after having changed position.

Stopping the heating

- ☞ Press button **5**.



This symbol remains on.



This indicator lamp goes off.

Changing the heating level

The system has 5 heating levels: **C1** (lowest level) to **C5** (highest level).

- ☞ After having displayed the heating level using buttons **1**, press simultaneously on buttons **4** and **5**.
The letter "C" will flash.
- ☞ Adjust the heating level by pressing buttons **1**.
- ☞ Simultaneously press buttons **4** and **5** to save the selected level.
The letter "C" will be displayed.



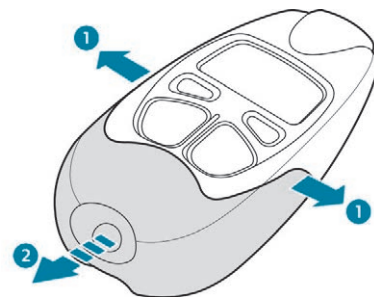
The presets are replaced by the new entries. The programmed times are memorised until the next change. When the start time is activated, it is not possible to change the heating level. You must first deactivate the start time.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault with the programmable heating, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing the battery

The remote control is powered by a 6 V-28L battery, which is provided. Information on the screen indicates when this battery needs to be changed.



- ☞ Unclip the case.
- ☞ Replace the battery observing the polarities.
- ☞ Reinitialise the remote control.



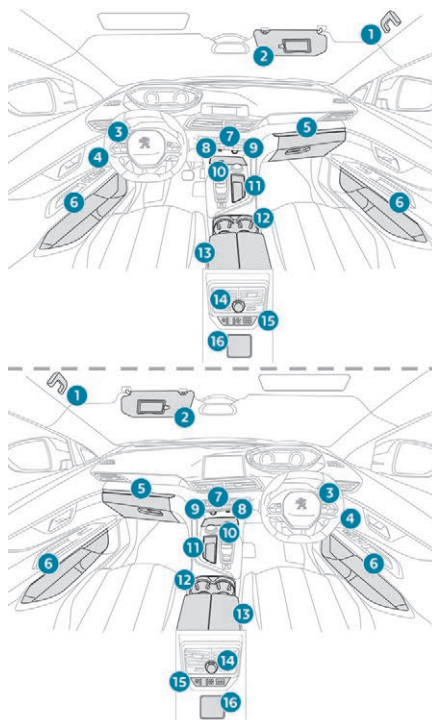
Do not throw away used batteries, take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

If the battery is disconnected or when changing the battery, the remote control must be reinitialised.

- ☞ After turning on the power, within the next 5 seconds, press button **4** for 1 second. If the operation is successful, the message "OK" will be displayed on the remote control's screen. If there is a fault, the message "FAIL" will appear.
- ☞ Start the operation again.

Front fittings

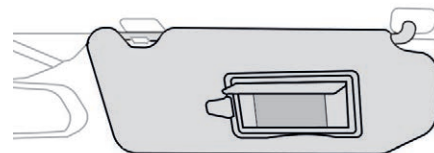


1. Grab handle
2. Sun visor
3. Card holder
4. Storage compartment below the steering wheel

5. Illuminated glove box
6. Door pockets
7. Scented air freshener
8. USB port
9. Front 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
10. Storage compartment or CD player or Wireless charger
11. Storage compartment
12. Cup holder
13. Front armrest with storage compartment
14. Rear 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
15. Rear blower
16. 230 V socket

Sun visor

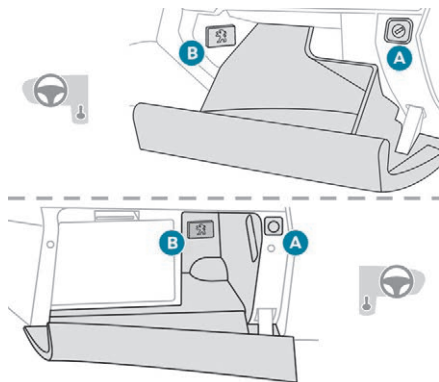
Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated vanity mirror.



- ☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically. This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Glove box

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. The glove box is lit when the lid is opened.

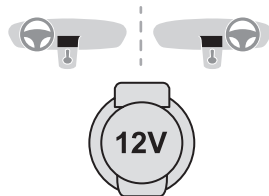


It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch **A**.

It also gives access to the housing for scented air freshener **B** cartridges.

! Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front – it may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket(s)

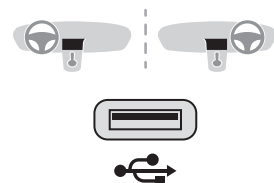


- ☞ To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.
- ☞ To use a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.

You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer, etc. After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB port



The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod®-type digital audio player, or a USB memory stick. The USB reader reads your audio files which are then transferred to the audio system and played via the vehicle's loudspeakers. These files are managed via the steering wheel controls or from the audio system.

i When connected to the USB port, the portable device can be charged automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.

For more details on the Audio equipment and telematics, and particularly the USB port, consult the corresponding section.

The USB port also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used on the touch screen.

FOCAL® premium Hi-Fi system



Your vehicle is equipped with a high-fidelity sound system designed by the French brand FOCAL®, a specialist in acoustics for more than 35 years and recognised throughout the world for its patented innovations and its unique audio signature.

10 speakers incorporating exclusive FOCAL® technologies offer the pleasure of pure and detailed sound inside the vehicle:

- High fidelity woofer/mid-range speakers: Polyglass technology delivering balance and precise sound.

- TNF tweeters: Inverted dome aluminium technology giving optimum sound dispersion and very detailed treble.
- Sub-woofer: 200 mm triple coil Power Flower™ technology for defined and dynamic reproduction of low frequencies.
- 12-way active amplification – 515 Watts: Hybrid Class AB/Class D technology providing breadth and finesse in the high frequency signals, as well as real power in the bass.

Wireless charger



This system allows the wireless charging of a portable device, such as a smartphone, using the principle of magnetic induction, based on the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell. The charging zone is identified by the Qi symbol.

Operation

The charger works with the engine running and in STOP mode of Stop & Start. Charging is managed by the smartphone.

For versions with Keyless Entry and Starting, operation of the charger may be interrupted when opening a door or switching off the ignition.

Charging

- ☞ First ensure that the charging zone is clear of other articles.
- ☞ Place a portable device in the middle of the charging zone.
- ☞ Once the portable device is detected, the charge indicator lamp comes on in green.



- ☞ Charging of the portable device's battery then starts.
- ☞ Once the portable device's battery is fully charged, the charge indicator lamp goes off.

! The system only supports charging one portable device at a time.

! Do not leave any metal objects (coins, keys, vehicle remote control, etc.) in the charging area while a device is being charged – risk of overheating or interrupting the charging process!



Checking operation

The state of the charge indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

Charge indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible portable device detected. Charging finished.
Fixed, green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.

Flashing, orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed, orange	Fault with the portable device's battery meter. Temperature of the portable device's battery too high. Charger fault.

If the indicator lamp is lit orange:



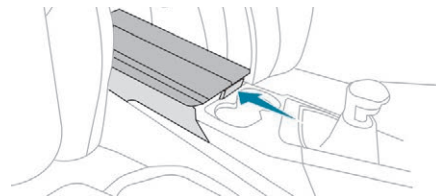
- remove the portable device, then place it back in the middle of the charging zone.
- or
- remove the portable device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Front armrest

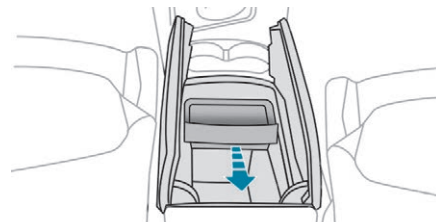
Comfort device for the driver and front passenger.
It includes a refrigerated storage space.

Opening



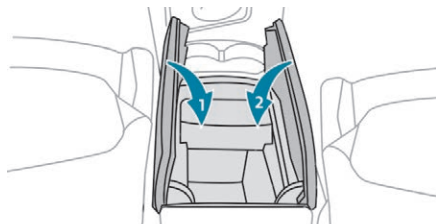
☞ Press the lever beneath the cover.
The cover opens in two parts.

Storage



The small removable tray can be installed in front of or behind the storage space.
A ventilation nozzle circulates fresh air.

Closing



- ☞ Fold the two parts of the cover back.

Scented air freshener

A complete air freshener system for the passenger compartment. It is supplied by a three-fragrance cartridge. This system operates only with the engine running.

Activation/Settings

The activation and adjustment of the air freshener are done from the touch screen:

- either directly from the **Applications** menu,
- or by personalising an ambience for the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.



From the **Applications** menu:

- ☞ select "**Scented air freshener**",
- ☞ select a fragrance from the three offered,

- ☞ select a delivery intensity to activate the system,
 - or
 - ☞ select "**OFF**" to deactivate it.
- The changes are taken into account immediately.

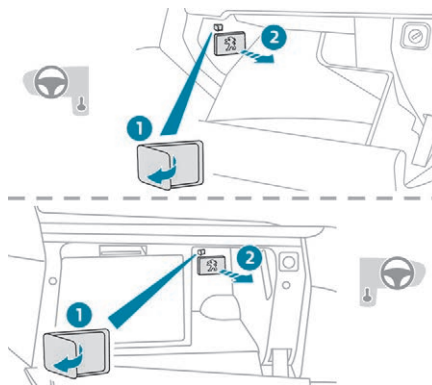


The scented air freshener is also managed by the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

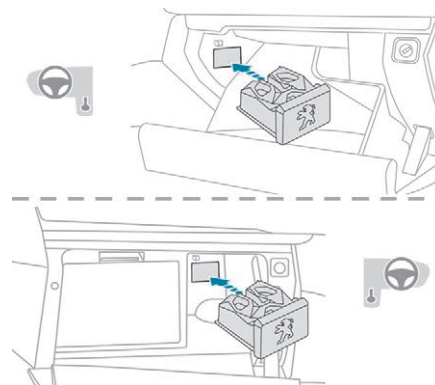
Changing the cartridge

Access to the cartridge is in the glove box.



- ☞ Ignition on, pull the tab **1** in the direction of the arrow to release the used cartridge.
- ☞ Remove the used cartridge **2** from its housing.

The air freshener stops working with the cartridge removed.



- ☞ Remove the two seals from the new cartridge.
- ☞ Insert the new cartridge into its housing observing the direction of fitment.

The air freshener is ready to operate again.

Recommendations

Do not discard the original cartridge, which serves as a blanking plug if the air freshener is not used.

Retain the cartridge sealing caps which serve as packaging if the cartridge is not used. Replacement cartridges are available from PEUGEOT dealers or from the brand's internet website.

! As a safety measure:

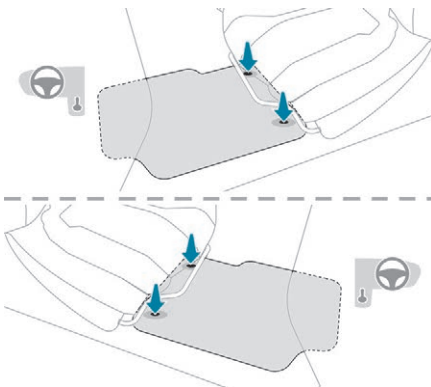
- use only the cartridges designed for the system,
- do not try to fit or remove a cartridge when driving,
- do not try to refill or dismantle the cartridges.

Keep cartridges out of the reach of children or pets.

Do not allow the fluid in the cartridge to come into contact with the skin or eyes. In the event of ingestion of the fluid in the cartridge, consult a doctor, showing them the product packaging or label.

Mats

Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.

The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ reattach the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

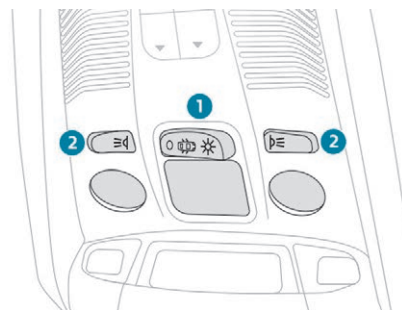
! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never place one mat on top of another.

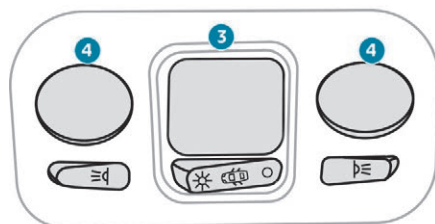
The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp

4. Rear map reading lamps

Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.



When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position. To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps



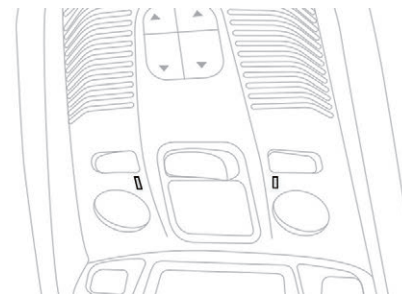
Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.



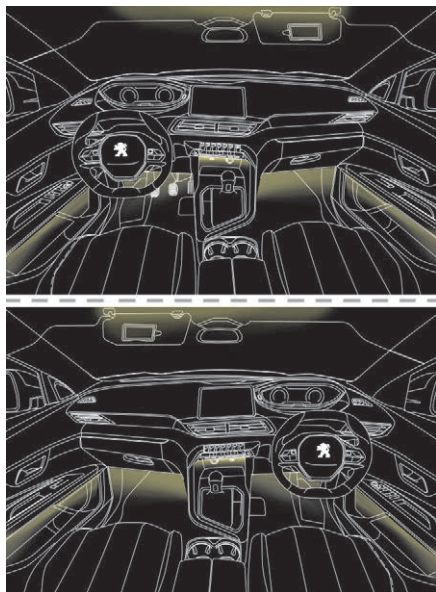
With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.



At night, the interior ambient lighting comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.



Depending on the version, the ambient lighting includes:

- two LEDs located in the front courtesy lamp,
- a light source in the storage compartment at the front of the centre console,
- a light source for each of the front footwells,
- illuminated guides on the front door panels and on the sides of the centre console,

- illuminated bezels for the front cup holders,
- a light source for each of the front door pockets,
- illuminated rails along the panoramic sunroof blind.

The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.



The interior ambient lighting can be activated or deactivated and its brightness adjusted in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

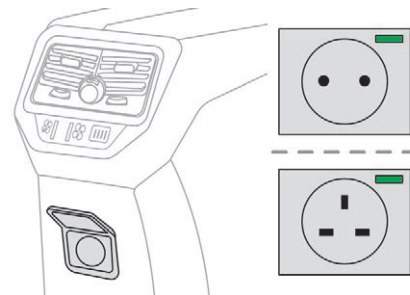


The interior ambient lighting is also managed by the i-Cockpit Amplify function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify function**, refer to the corresponding section.

Rear fittings

230 V/50 Hz power socket



It is located at the back of the centre console beneath a protective cover.

This socket (max. power: 150 W) operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.

- ☞ Raise the protective cover.
- ☞ Check that the green indicator lamp is on.
- ☞ Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).

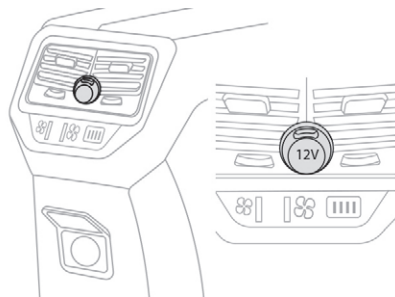
In the event of a fault, the green warning lamp flashes.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension lead or multi-socket connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
Do not use a device with a metal case (electric shaver, etc.).

i As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off.

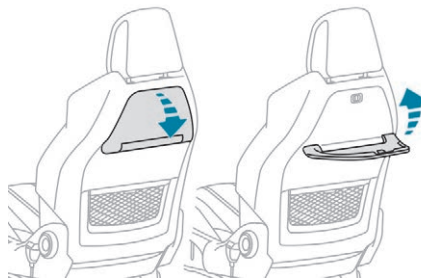
12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

"Aircraft" type tables

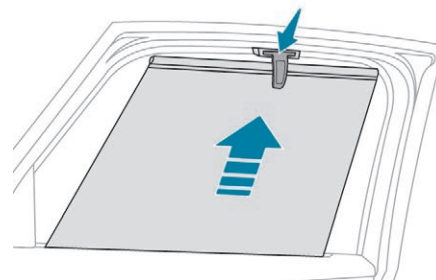


- ☞ To use the table, lower it fully until it locks in the low position.
- ☞ To store it, raise the table, passing the point of resistance, to the high position.

i On the passenger side, do not forget to fold it before placing the backrest in the table position.
For more information on the **Front seats** and, in particular, using the "table" position for the backrest, refer to the corresponding section.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the table.
They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of emergency braking or impact.

Side blinds

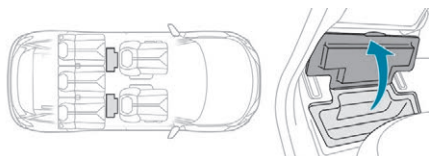


Fitted to the windows in row 2, they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.

- ☞ Pull the central tab to unroll the blind.
- ☞ Position the blind's clip on the hook.

- i** Always guide the blind slowly using the tab, both up and down.

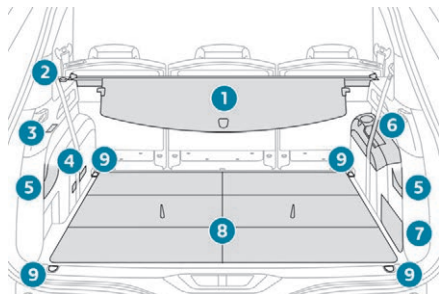
Storage boxes



Depending on version, the storage boxes are fitted in the floor, at the foot of the outer seats on the second row.

On the left side, it may also contain the temporary puncture repair kit.
To open them, lift the cover by the notch.

Boot fittings



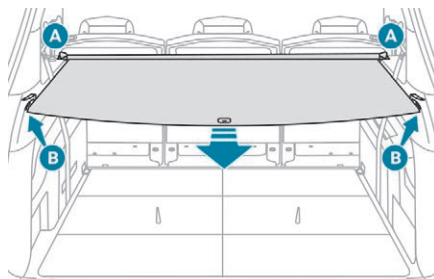
1. Load space cover
2. 12 V accessory socket (maximum power: 120 Watts)
3. Boot lamp
4. Luggage retaining strap
5. Storage brackets of the load space cover
6. Armrest with cup holder and storage
7. Open storage compartment
8. Concertina boards
9. Stowing rings

Load space cover

In 5-seat configuration, it is installed behind the second row seats, with the third row seats stored folded away.

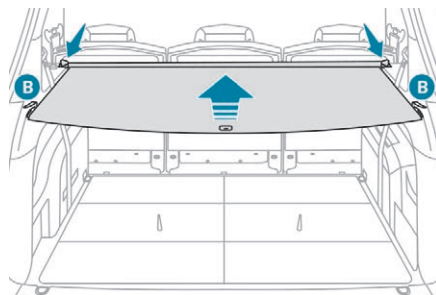
In 7-seat configuration, it is stored behind the third row seats.

Installation



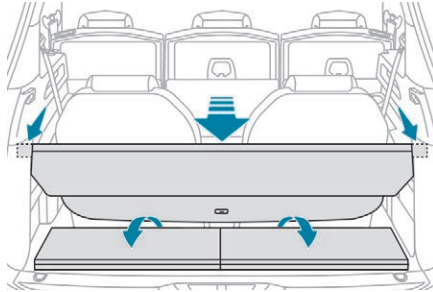
- ☞ Position the left and right ends of the roller in cut-outs **A**, with the mobile flap at the front.
- ☞ Pull out the roller until it reaches the boot pillars.
- ☞ Insert the guides of the roller into the rails in pillars **B**.

Removal



- ☞ Remove the guides of the roller from the rails in pillars **B**.
- ☞ Guide the roller as it reels in.
- ☞ Unlock the roller by pressing one of the handles located at the ends of the roller bracket.

Storage behind the 3rd row seats



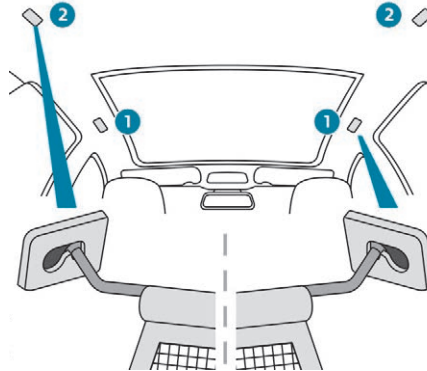
- ☞ Make sure the third row seats are folded away.
- ☞ Fold the first two concertina boards.
- ☞ Position the roller in the space located above the armrest, side by side, tilting it slightly.
- ☞ Slide the roller to the stop position, until it reaches the notches arranged at the back of the boot, with the two hinges facing down.
- ☞ Unfold the third row seats.

The folded concertina boards can be placed in the horizontal or upright position.

To fold the third row seats with the roller stored at the back, it is necessary to raise the concertina boards in order to give access to the seat unlocking controls (red straps).

! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

High load retaining net

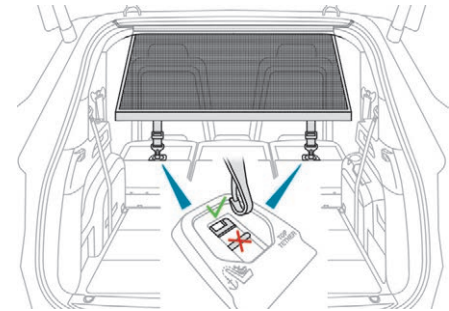


This removable net allows the entire loading volume to be used up to the roof:

- behind the front seats (1st row) when the rear seats are folded down,
- behind the rear seats (2nd row) when the load space cover is removed.

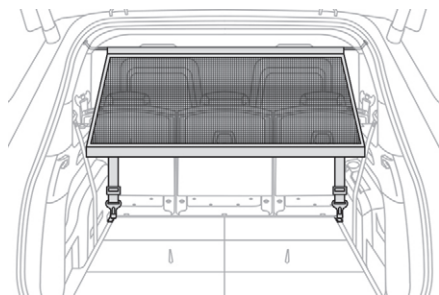
i It offers protection to the occupants when very sharp braking occurs.

Behind the front seats



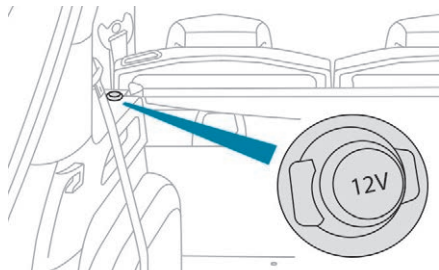
- ☞ Fold down the rear seats.
- ☞ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into the fixing points of the roof.
- ☞ Attach the net's straps to the lower anchoring points, located in the housing of the Top Tether fixings.
- ☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

Behind the rear seats



- ☞ Remove the load space cover.
- ☞ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into the fixing points of the roof.
- ☞ Attach the straps of the net to the lower rings, located on each side trim of the boot.
- ☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

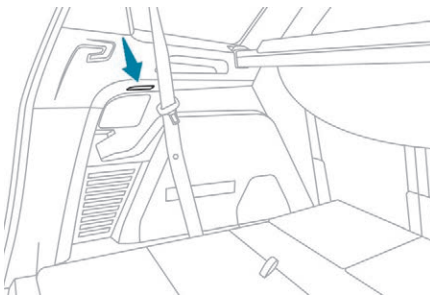
12 V accessory socket



- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

Boot lighting



This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

- i** The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
 - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
 - with the engine running, unlimited.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting

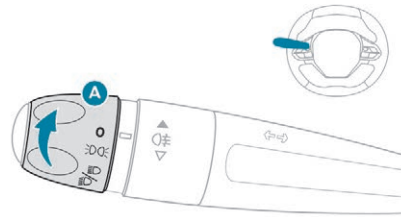
Selection of main lighting mode

- Turn ring **A** to align the desired symbol with the marking.

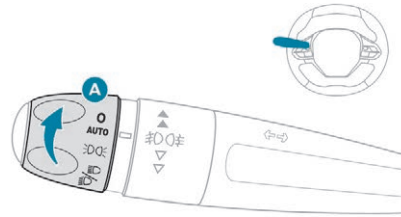
- O** Lighting off (ignition off)/
Daytime running lamps (engine running).
- AUTO** Automatic illumination of headlamps.
Daytime running lamps/Dipped
beam/Main beam.
-  Sidelamps only.
-  Dipped or main beam headlamps.

i "Highway function"
On versions fitted with "Full LED" technology headlamps, the range of the dipped beam headlamps is automatically increased once the speed of the vehicle is above 68 mph (110 km/h).

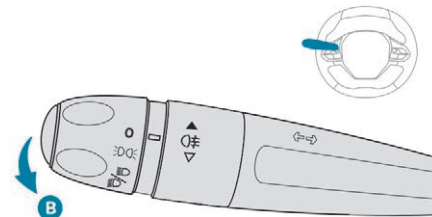
Without AUTO lighting



With AUTO lighting



Headlamp dipping



- Pull stalk **B** towards you to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps or to activate automatic headlamp dipping.

In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

-  A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Foglamps

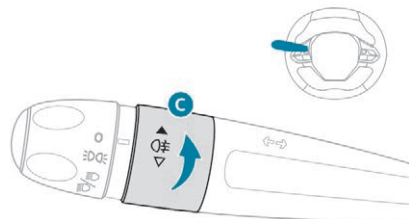
-  In clear weather or rain, during the day or at night, it is prohibited to switch on the front or rear foglamps. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or snow.

In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.

Switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.



Rear foglamps



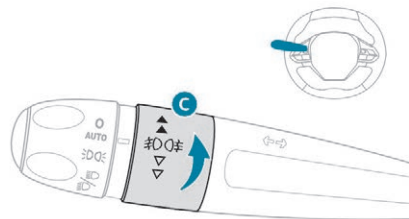
- The main or dipped beam headlamps must be on.

Rotate and release ring C:

- forward to switch on the rear foglamps.
- backwards to switch them off.



Front and rear foglamps



- The sidelamps or dipped or main beam headlamps must be on.

Rotate and release ring C:

- once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.
- once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

Switching off the lamps when the ignition is switched off

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lamps after the ignition is switched off

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring A to the 0 position – lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy-saving mode).

- In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

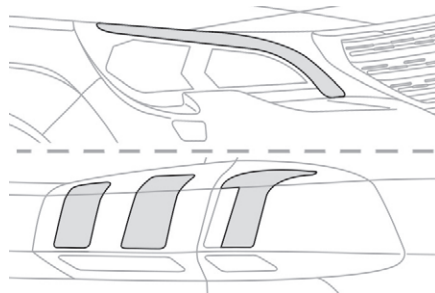
- Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

Travelling abroad

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Daytime running lamps/ sidelamps

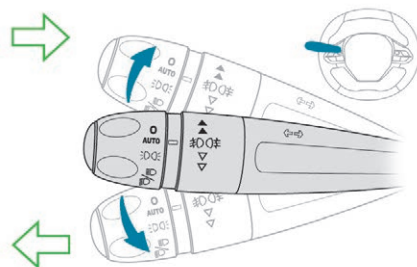
The LEDs of these lamps light up automatically when the engine starts, at the front and back of the vehicle.



They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "0" or "AUTO" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position "AUTO" with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

Direction indicators



- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

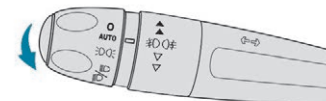
i If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

On versions fitted with LED direction indicators, the line of LEDs is illuminated sequentially. The brightness of the daytime running lamps is reduced during sequential operation of the direction indicators.

Parking lamps



Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

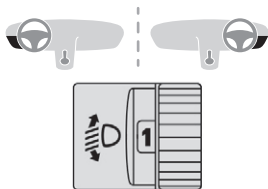
- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example, when parking on the left, turn the lighting control stalk upwards; the right-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

Headlamp adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps

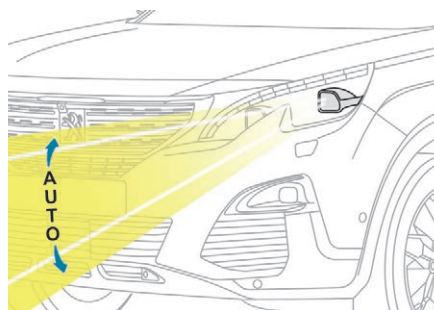


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

- 0 Driver only or driver + front passenger.
- 1 Driver only or driver + front passenger + row 3.
- 2 7 people.
- 3 7 people + loads in the boot.
- 4 Not used.
- 5 Driver + loads in the boot.
- 6 Not used.

i The initial setting is position "0".

Automatic adjustment of "Full LED" technology headlamps



This system automatically adjusts the height of the beams from this type of headlamp, according to the load in the vehicle, to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users.



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

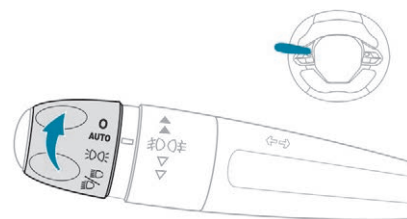


Do not touch the "Full LED" headlamps.
Risk of electrocution!

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by the sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Switching on



☞ Turn the ring to the "AUTO" position.
When the function is activated, a message is also displayed.

Switching off

☞ Turn the ring to another position.
Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault



In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the sunshine sensor, combined with the rain sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

i In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

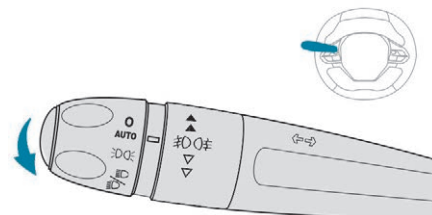
With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the vehicle parameters menu in the screen.

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on



- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
- ☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

For versions without "Automatic illumination of headlamps", the manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after 30 seconds.

For versions with "Automatic illumination of headlamps", the period of operation of the manual guide-me-home lighting is the same as that set for the automatic guide-me-home lighting.

Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of headlamps" function activated, under low ambient light, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the vehicle parameters menu in the screen.

Welcome lighting

Availability of this function depends on version.



Make a short press on this remote control button.

The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds.

Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lighting immediately.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the mirror and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on



When the front courtesy lamp switch is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- on opening a door,
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

Whatever the position of the front courtesy lamp switch, they also come on with the exterior welcome lighting and the guide-me-home lighting.

Switching off

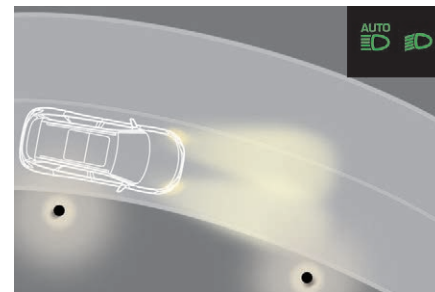
They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

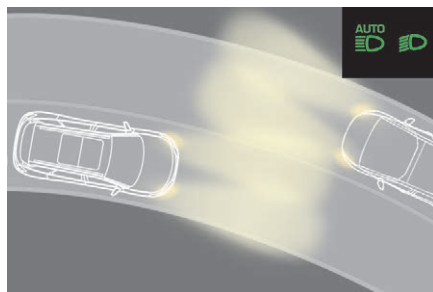
Automatic headlamp dipping

System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the ambient light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

! This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.





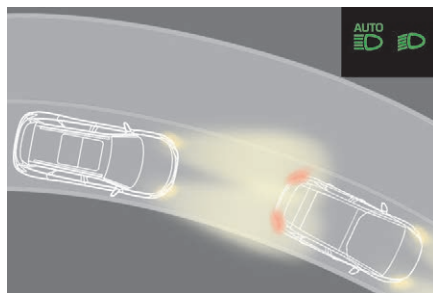
Activation/Deactivation

- ☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.



- ☞ In the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dip**".

The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.



Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:



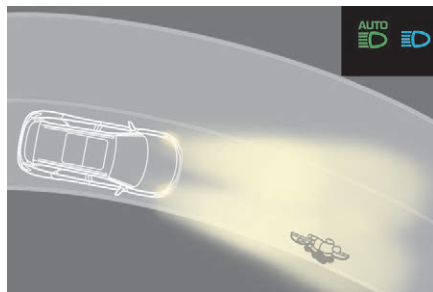
- dipped beam is maintained, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function. As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- ☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
 - if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
 - if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

i The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

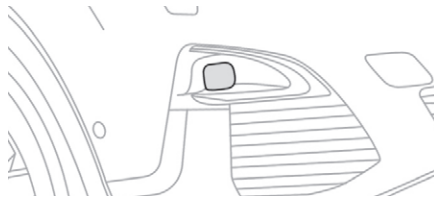
- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

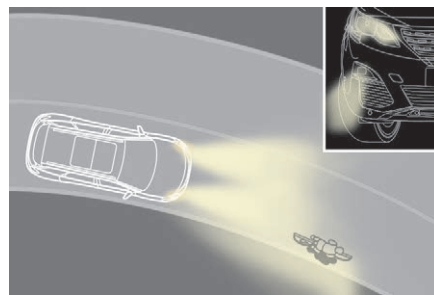
The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

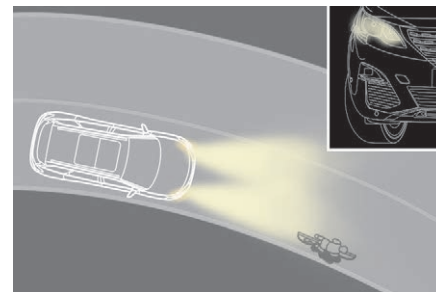
Cornering lighting



Present on vehicles fitted with "Full LED" technology headlamps, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).



With cornering lighting



Without cornering lighting

Activation/Deactivation



The cornering lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiper on engaging reverse gear.

i In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

! Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Windscreen wipers

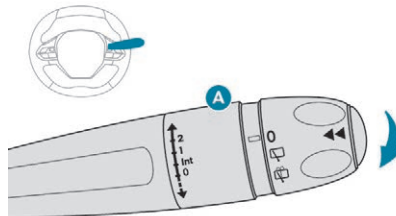
A. Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

- 2** Fast wiping (heavy rain).
- 1** Normal wiping (moderate rain).
- Int** Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
- 0** Off.
- ↓** Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

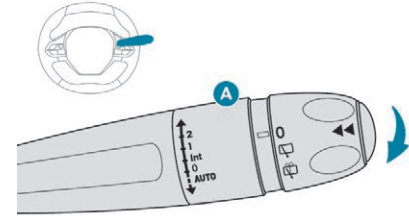
or

- AUTO ↓** Automatic wiping (press down, then release).
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

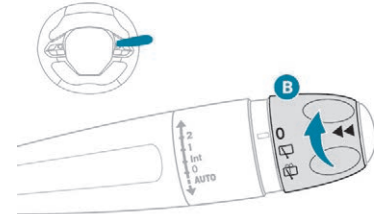
Without AUTO wiping



With AUTO wiping



Rear wiper



B. Rear wiper selection ring: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.



Off.



Intermittent wipe.



Wash-wipe.

Turn the ring fully; the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper automatically operate for a set duration.

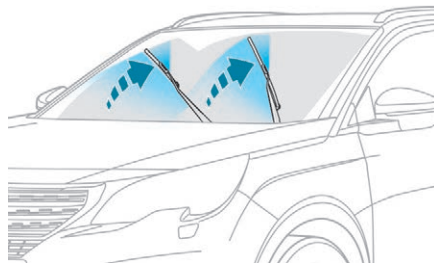
Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating.

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle parameters menu in the screen. This function is activated by default.

! In the event of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towbar, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle settings menu.

Front screenwash



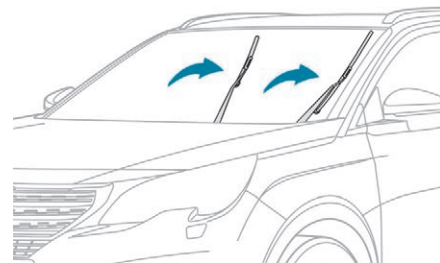
☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you. The screenwash and windscreen wiper operate for as long as the control stalk is pulled. Termination of the screenwash is followed by a final wiping cycle.

i The front screenwash includes a wiper blade system with integral washer jets. The screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces the consumption of screenwash fluid. In some cases, depending on the contents or colour of the liquid and on the outdoor brightness, the liquid spray may be hardly noticeable.

! To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use screenwash fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.



- ☞ In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

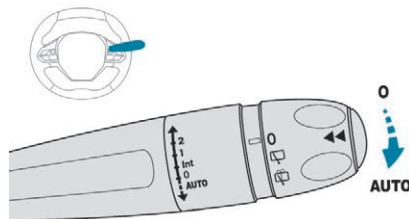
- i** To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
 - clean them regularly using soapy water,
 - avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
 - replace them at the first signs of wear.

Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall without any action on the part of the driver.

Detection of rainfall is by means of a sensor at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.

Switching on



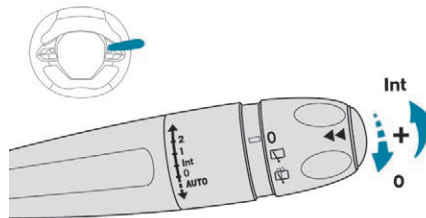
- ☞ Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.



This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Switching off



- ☞ Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (**Int**, **1** or **2**).



This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

- i** The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.

Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** Do not cover the rain sensor, combined with the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen. Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

! Labels are attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for your vehicle. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

! For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

! We draw your attention to the following points:

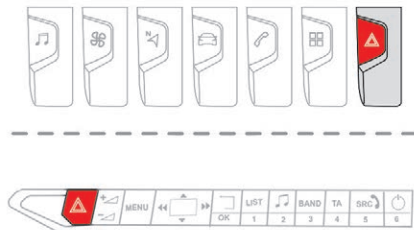
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

! Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

! Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

Hazard warning lamps



- When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the force of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate. It is also possible to switch them off by pressing the switch on the dashboard.

Horn

Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.



- Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

Emergency or assistance call



Peugeot Connect SOS

SOS In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing green LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the green LED goes off.

The green LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

* In accordance with the general conditions of service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and of PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

i If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

For all countries except Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



If the red indicator lamp flashes then goes off: there is a system fault.

If the red indicator lamp is on continuously: replace the back-up battery.

For Russia, Belarus and Kazakhstan.



If the red indicator lamp is on continuously: there is a system fault.

If the red indicator lamp flashes: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, the emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

** According to the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and of PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

i If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

i For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

A set of the following Electronic Stability systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).
- trailer stability assist (TSA).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The electronic brake force distribution system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system optimises traction in order to avoid wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, this system monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

This system allows control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.



Illumination of this warning lamp, linked with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, signals that there is a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

 Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.

 **In emergency braking, press very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

 When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

 After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Intelligent traction control system

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

 The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Deactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the system when grip conditions allow.



Deactivation of the function is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

It is confirmed by the display of a message.

The ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine.

Reactivation

The ASR system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:



Reactivation of the function is done from the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

It is confirmed by the display of a message.

Operating fault



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

! ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Trailer stability assist

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control (ESC) must not have any faults.

Between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), if the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer, it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle. For advice on driving safely when **Towing a trailer**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

! The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It should not encourage the driver to take risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.) or drive at too high a speed. In certain cases, oscillation of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer. When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden snaking of the trailer.

Advanced Grip Control

Special patented traction control system which improves traction on snow, mud and sand.

This system, the operation of which has been optimised for each situation, allows you to manoeuvre in most conditions of poor grip (encountered during touring use).

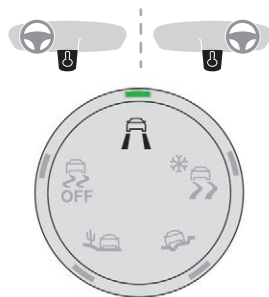
Associated with all-season M+S (Mud and Snow) tyres, this system offers a compromise between safety, adhesion and traction.

The accelerator pedal should be pressed sufficiently to allow the system to use the power of the engine. Operation at high engine speeds is completely normal.

A five-position selector knob allows you to choose the setting best suited to the driving conditions encountered.

An indicator lamp associated with each mode comes on, accompanied by the display of a message to confirm your choice.

Operating modes



Standard (ESC)



This mode is calibrated for a low level of wheel spin, based on the different levels of grip normally encountered on the road.

i Every time the ignition is switched off, the system automatically resets to this mode.

Snow



This mode adapts its strategy to the conditions of grip encountered for each of the two front wheels on moving off.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

All terrain (mud, damp grass, etc.)



This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))



P Place the knob in this position.

! Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.



You can deactivate the ASR and DSC systems by turning the knob to the "OFF" position.

The ASR and DSC systems will no longer act on the engine operation or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

These systems are reactivated automatically from 31 mph (50 km/h) or every time the ignition is switched on.

! Recommendations

Your vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads but it allows you to occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving such as:

- crossing and driving on terrain which could damage the underbody or strip away components (fuel pipe, fuel cooler, etc.) due to obstacles or stones in particular,
- driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip,
- crossing a stream.

Hill Assist Descent Control

System that provides assistance when descending on loose or soft surfaces (gravel, mud, etc.) or a steep gradient.

This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.

During a descent, it assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

! For the system to activate, the slope must be greater than 5%.

The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.

Otherwise engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling. With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

! When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.



The system is not available:

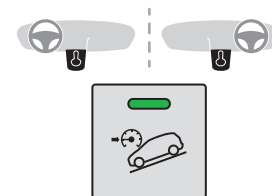
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h),
- if the speed of the vehicle is being controlled by the Adaptive cruise control with Stop function, depending on the type of gearbox.

Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.

The system's status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or moving at speeds up to approx. 31 mph (50 km/h).



To select the system, at a speed below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its green indicator lamp comes on; this warning lamp comes on in grey in the instrument panel.



- ☞ The system becomes active at a speed below 19 mph (30 km/h); this warning lamp comes on in green in the instrument panel.

- ☞ When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:



- if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the warning lamp flashes rapidly,
- if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the warning lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

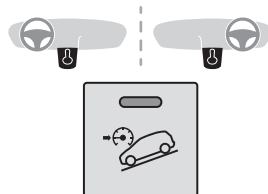
During a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.

The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.

If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the warning lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the indicator lamp in the button remains on. Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.

You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

Switching off



- ☞ Press this button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator goes off in the instrument panel.

Above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Malfunction



If a fault occurs with the system, this warning lamp comes on in green, accompanied by the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

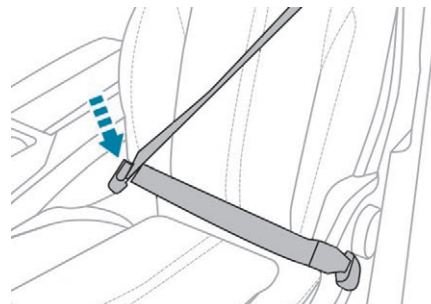
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Fastening



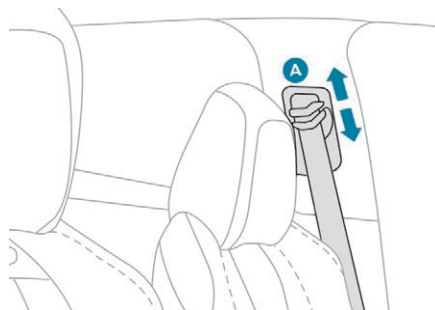
- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.

- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

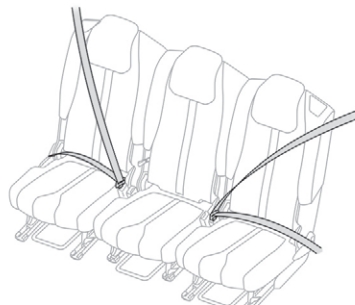
- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Height adjustment



- ☞ To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

Rear 2nd row seat belts



Each of the 2nd row rear seats comes with a seat belt, with three fixing points and an inertia reel.
The outer seats are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.

- !** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts check that:
- the outer seat belts are properly tensioned,
 - the central seat belt is completely reeled in.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.

- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

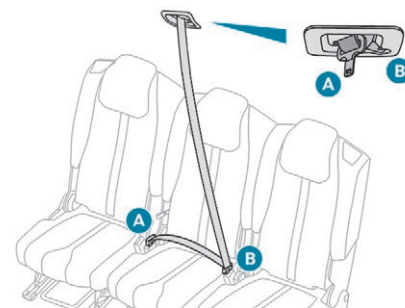
Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it is reeled in.

Rear 2nd row central seat belt

The seat belt for the rear central position is integrated into the roof.

Installation



- ☞ Pull the strap and insert tongue **A** into the right-hand buckle.
- ☞ Pull the strap and insert tongue **B** into the left-hand buckle.
- ☞ Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Removal and storage

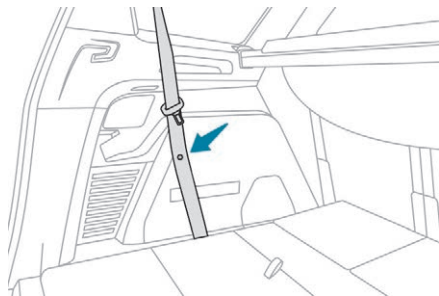
- Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the black button on buckle **A**.
- Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

Rear 3rd row seat belts

Installation

- Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Removal and storage

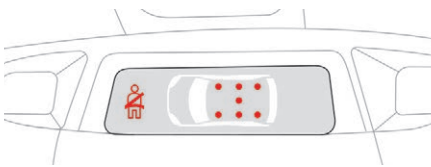


- Press the red button on the buckle.
- Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

- Flatten the seat belt strap against the boot side trim using the magnetic retaining system.

! Ensure seat belts are always fixed when not in use.

Seat belt not fastened/unfastened alerts



Not fastened/unfastened warning lamp



It comes on in red on both the instrument panel and the front passenger airbag and seat belts warning lamps display, once the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification warning lamp



It comes on in the display: the illuminated red warning lamps indicate the location of the not fastened or unfastened seat belts.

Front seat belts not fastened alerts

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicators light up if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.

At speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for two minutes. After that period, these warning lamps remain lit until the seat belts have been fastened.

Rear seat belts not fastened alerts

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or the vehicle moving at speeds above 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp and the corresponding indicators light up for around thirty seconds, if one or more rear seat belts are not fastened.

Seat belts unfastened alert

After the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicators light up if the driver and/or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts.

At speeds above 12 miles (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for two minutes. After that period, these warning lamps remain lit until the seat belts have been refastened.

Advice

! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.

The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.

Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over.

You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact,

the pyrotechnic pretensioner device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked and, if necessary, replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

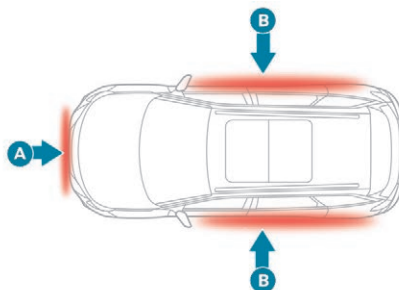
System designed to contribute towards improving passenger safety (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger). If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

Impact detection zones

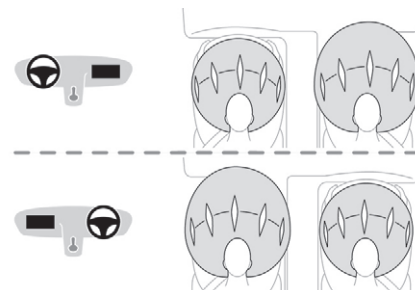


A. Front impact zone.

B. Side impact zone.

i The deployment of an airbag is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

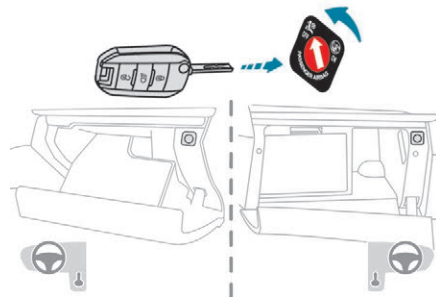
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed (except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated) in the event of a serious frontal impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone A, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag



- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the **"OFF"** position.
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Reactivating the front passenger airbag

When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **ON** position to reactivate the front airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning display screen for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

Lateral airbags



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a severe side impact to minimise the risk of injury to the chest, between hip and shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries in case of airbag deployment.

Curtain airbags

Do not attach anything or hang anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Do not attach anything to or hang anything from the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

- The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

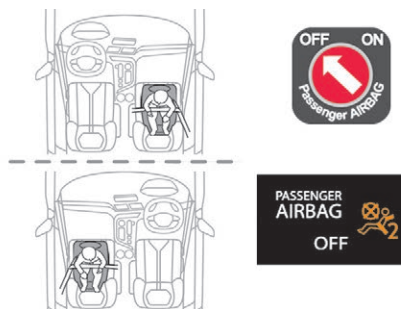
- It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
 - "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3,
 - "**forward facing**" over the age of 3.

! Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the latter is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
In the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.
At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Child seat at the front

"Rearward facing"



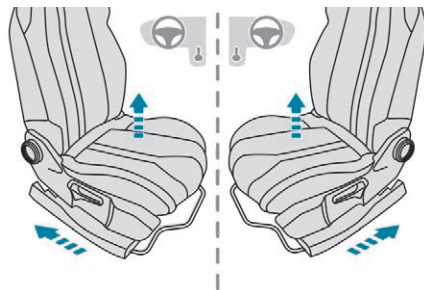
When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened.

! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**

"Forward facing"



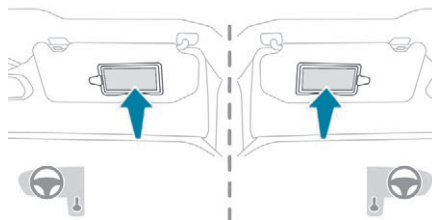
When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle seat to the fully back and highest position, with the backrest straightened. Leave the front passenger airbag active.



Passenger seat adjusted to the highest position and in the maximum longitudinal rear position.

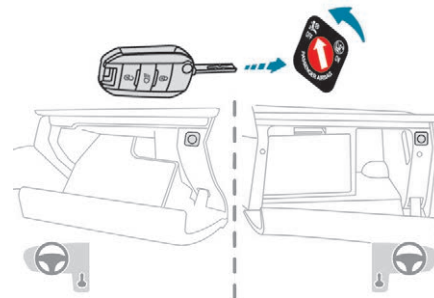
Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.



The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.

Passenger airbag OFF



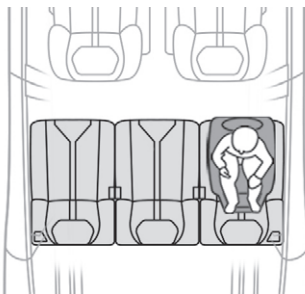
i For more information on **Airbags** and particularly on deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلال الطفل الوجه باتجاه الراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مغلقة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumist'ujte dětské zadržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkää ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSZÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalix tista' tikkawza korrimment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retenere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTELNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

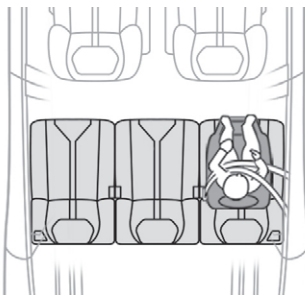
Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.








In the presence of a dog guard, it is imperative that children's booster seats with backrest be installed in the second row.

Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



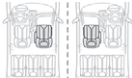
L6

"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using a seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing universally approved child seats secured using the seat belt (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	15-25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	22-36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 1 (c)	Passenger seat with height adjustment*		Deactivated, "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated, "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
	Passenger seat without height adjustment**		Deactivated, "OFF"	U	U	U	U
			Activated, "ON"	X	UF	UF	UF
Row 2 (d)	Seat behind driver's seat			U	U	U	U
	Seat behind passenger's seat			U	U	U	U
	Centre rear seat			U	U	U	U

* Max height position.

** Backrest straightened.

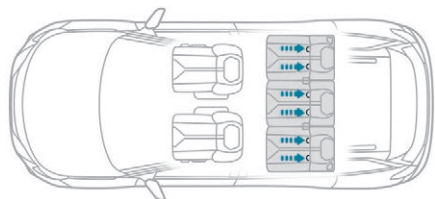
Seat position			Front passenger airbag	Weight of the child/indicative age			
				Under 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	15-25 kg (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	22-36 kg (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Row 3 (d)	Outer rear seats			U	U	U	U

- U:** position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" use.
- UF:** position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved for "forward facing" use.
- X:** position not suitable for the installation of a child seat of the weight group indicated.

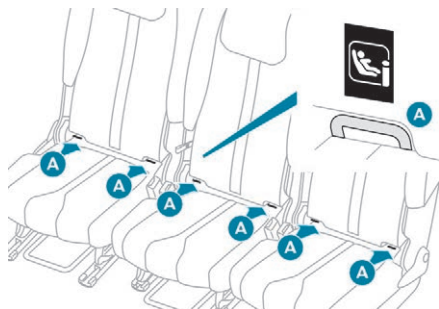
- (a)** Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
- (b)** Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat or in the 3rd row.
- (c)** Refer to the legislation in force in your country before carrying your child in this seating position.
- (d)** When installing a child seat on a rear seat in a "rearward facing" or "forward facing" position, move the front seat forward then adjust the backrest to an upright position to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

ISOFIX mountings

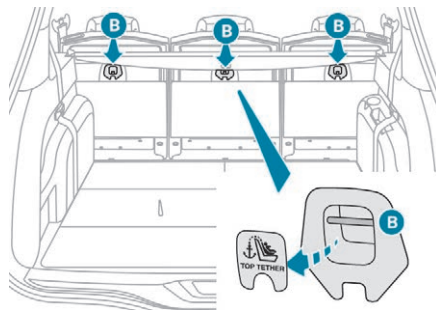
The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle's seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located behind the seat and indicated by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER**, for fixing the upper strap.

This arrangement reduces forward tipping of the child seat in the event of a front impact. The ISOFIX mounting system ensures fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

ISOFIX child seats are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- ☞ remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),

- ☞ pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- ☞ fix the hook of the upper strap to ring **B**,
- ☞ tighten the upper strap.

i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

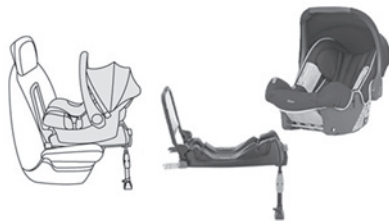
Recommended ISOFIX child seats

i Also consult the installation notes from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"

(size category: E)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.

The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX"

(size category: B1)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed only in the forward facing position.

Is attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Three seat shell angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Summary table of locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the child seat's ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter between **A** and **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

			Weight of the child/indicative age									
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"		
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Seat		Front passenger airbag										
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat with height adjustment	Deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
		Activated "ON"	Not ISOFIX									
	Passenger seat without height adjustment	Deactivated "OFF"	Not ISOFIX									
		Activated "ON"	Not ISOFIX									
Row 2	Seat behind the driver's seat		X	IL(b)	IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Seat behind the passenger's seat		IL(b)	X	IL			IL		IUF/IL		
	Centre rear seat		X		IL			IL		IUF/IL		

			Weight of the child/indicative age								
			Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg Under 13 kg (group 0) (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years			
Type of ISOFIX child seat			Carrycot		"Rearward facing"			"Rearward facing"		"Forward facing"	
ISOFIX size category			F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B B1
Seat		Front passenger airbag									
Row 3	Outer rear seats		Not ISOFIX								

X: seat is not suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX seat or carrycot of the weight group indicated.

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Universal seat, Forward facing, secured using the upper strap.

IL: seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which is either:

- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- a cot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For securing the upper strap using the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

- (a)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child on this seat.
- (b)** The installation of a carrycot on this seat may prevent the use of one or more of the other seats in this row.

Summary table of the positions for i-Size child seats

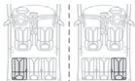
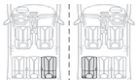
The i-Size child seats have two latches that engage on the two rings **A**.

i-Size child seats also have:

- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**,
- or a support leg resting on the vehicle's floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position, which prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the associated section.

In accordance with the new European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing i-Size child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings approved for i-Size.

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 1 (a)	Passenger seat		Deactivated, "OFF"	Not i-Size
			Activated, "ON"	Not i-Size
Row 2	Seat behind driver's seat			i-U
	Seat behind passenger's seat			i-U
	Centre rear seat			i-U

Seat position			Front passenger airbag	i-Size restraint system
Row 3	Outer rear seats			Not i-Size

- i-U:** suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing and rearward facing.
- i-UF:** only suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category, forward facing.
- X:** seat position not suitable for i-Size restraint systems in the "Universal" category.
- (a)** Refer to the current legislation in your country before placing a child in this seating position.

Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimal installation of the forward facing child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children in front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.

Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Installing a booster seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

PEUGEOT recommends using a booster seat with a backrest equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

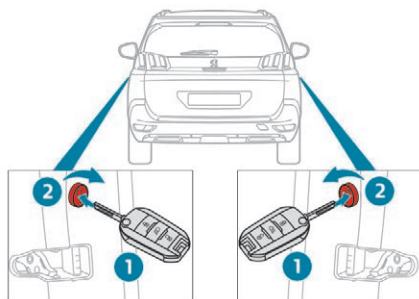
Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of a rear door using its interior control.

The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door.

It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

Locking



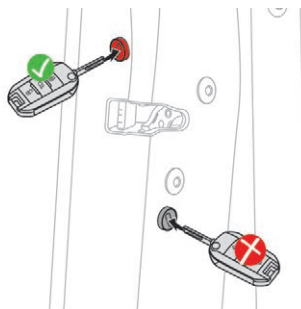
☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:

- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the **red** control as far as it will go:

- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.



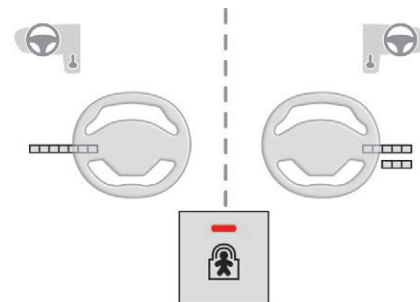
! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

Electric child lock

Remote control system to prevent opening of the rear doors using their interior controls.

The control is located on the dashboard, driver's side.

Activation



☞ Press this button.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by the display of an activation message.

This red indicator lamp remains on for as long as the child lock is activated.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off, accompanied by the display of a deactivation message.

This indicator lamp remains off while the child lock is deactivated.

! This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control.

Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions. Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

Important!

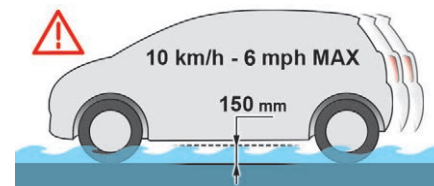
! Never drive with the parking brake applied
– Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.): Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive through water:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. Under no circumstances exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.

If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.



New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

i The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid the audible signal if a genuine PEUGEOT towbar is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

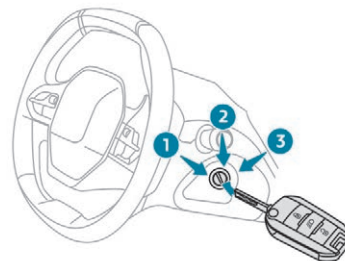
The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

A few seconds after switching off the ignition, this system locks the engine control system, therefore preventing the engine from being started in the event of a break-in.

If the system fails, as reported by a message, the engine will not start.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer.

Starting/Switching off the engine with the key

Key ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- Position **1 (Stop)**: inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.
- Position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running.
- Position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged.

Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Starting the engine

Parking brake applied:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then depress the clutch pedal fully.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal fully.
- ☞ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- ☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

i In certain cases, you may have to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (wheels on full lock, for example).

- ☞ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

i With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations when stationary, with the engine running, for anything up to two minutes (accelerated idle speed).

- ☞ With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.



Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

i In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

! If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In temperate conditions, do not let the engine idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

! Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very extreme wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before starting the vehicle.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Stop the vehicle.
- ☞ With the engine running in idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

i To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- ☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

! Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

i When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1 - Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc.

i For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Key left in

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.

To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine



- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the clutch pedal.

or

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the brake pedal.

i The presence of the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key in the recognition zone is essential. If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting" section.



- ☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

On certain versions with the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the steering column does not lock.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is negative and/or the engine is cold, the start will only take place once the preheater warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal fully depressed until the warning lamp goes off and not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering column; a message warns you when this is needed.

- i** With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).



As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.

or

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column. On certain versions with the EAT8 automatic gearbox, the steering column does not lock.



If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

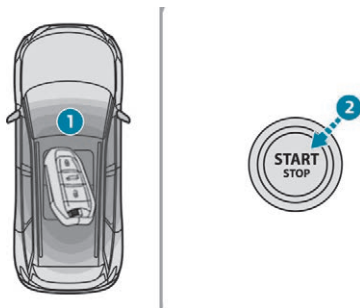


Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.



Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Switching the ignition on (without starting)



With the Keyless Entry and Starting remote control inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

This also allows some equipment to be activated (examples: audio system, lighting, etc.).



- Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.

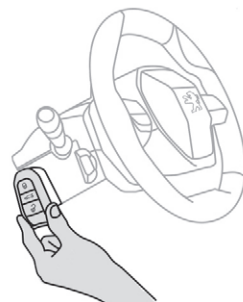
- Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column to allow the engine to be started if the system does not detect the key in the recognition zone, or when the battery in the electronic key is discharged.

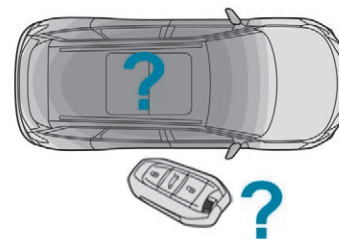


- Place and hold the remote control against the reader.
- With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.

- With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then fully depress the brake pedal.

- Press the "**START/STOP**" button. The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.



- To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off



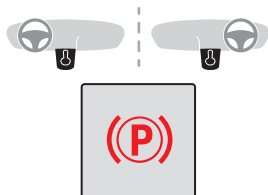
In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electric parking brake

The system allows, in automatic operation, the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and release as the vehicle moves off.



The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

- ☞ by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
 - ☞ by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal, to release it.
- Automatic mode is activated by default.

Indicator lamp

 This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

This indicator lamp flashes on the control lever when manual parking brake application or release is performed.

-  In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.
- As a safety measure with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing one of the chocks supplied against one of the wheels.
- Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Label on door panel



Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed, not flashing.

If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

-  Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

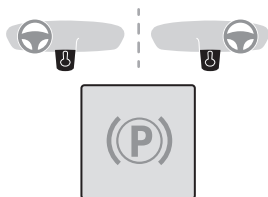
! When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear with a manual gearbox. When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and select mode **P** with an automatic gearbox. For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

Manual operation

Manual release

Ignition on or engine running:

- ☞ press the brake pedal,
- ☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.



The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

Stationary vehicle:

- ☞ pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.



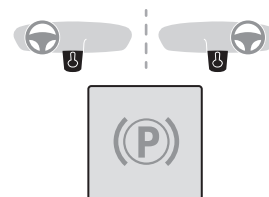
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Automatic operation

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.



With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1st gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select position **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

i With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

(P) Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

! Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

i With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake using the control lever.

Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

(P) Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.

To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit the chocks supplied against one of the wheels.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released

- ☞** Switch off the engine.
Illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and control lever confirm application of the parking brake.
- ☞** Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- ☞** Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake.



The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

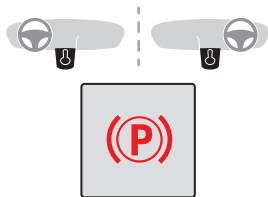
- ☞** Switch off the ignition.

i With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked. For more information on the **Automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

i With an automatic gearbox, when mode **N** is engaged, opening the driver's door will cause an audible signal to sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.



- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.
- ☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.

Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

Emergency braking

- ! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure in braking using the brake pedal or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, driver under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.

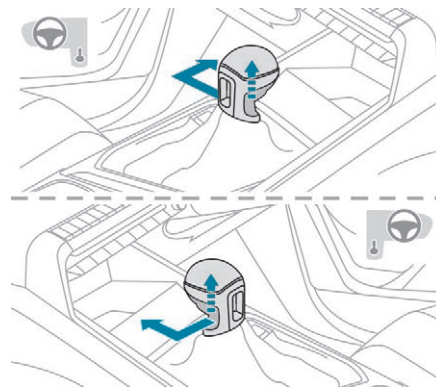
The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking. If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake control faulty" will be displayed in the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the trigger under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

i Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

! As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine, always select neutral and depress the clutch pedal.

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

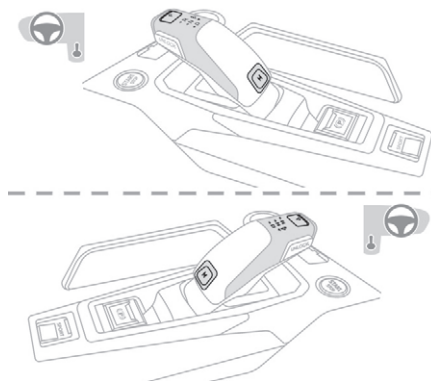
☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engagement of 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8)

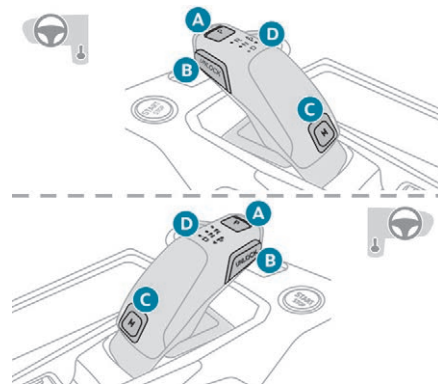
Six or eight-speed automatic gearbox with push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via steering mounted paddles, located behind the steering wheel.

Gearbox selector positions

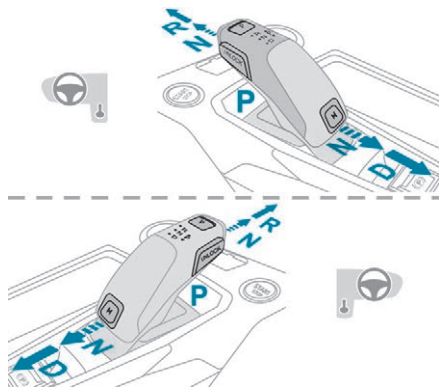


- P.** Park.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: in certain car washing machines, when towing the vehicle, etc.
- D.** Automatic mode.
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.
- M.** Manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the controls at the steering wheel.

Push selector



- A.** Button **P**.
To set the gearbox to **P**.
- B.** **Unlock** button.
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P**, with foot on the brake pedal, or change to **R**.
This button should be pressed before pressing the selector.
- C.** Button **M**.
To change from **D** to permanent manual mode.
- D.** Gearbox state indicators (**P, R, N, D**).



Move the selector by pressing it forward (**N** or **R**) or rearward (**N** or **D**) once or twice, if necessary going beyond the point of resistance.

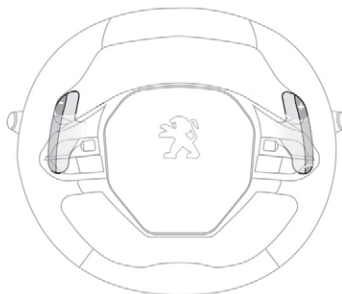
The selector returns to its initial position when released.

For example, from **P** to **R**, you can optionally push forward twice without crossing the point of resistance or push once crossing the point of resistance:

- In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
- In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering mounted control paddles allow the driver to change gear manually.



- ☞ Pull the right-hand "+" paddle toward you and release to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the left-hand "-" paddle toward you and release to change down a gear.

i The steering mounted control paddles cannot be used to engage neutral or to select or come out of reverse.

"Sport" button

With the engine running, when the programme associated with the button is active, the gearbox delays changing up for a more dynamic driving style.

The programme is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Activating the **Sport** programme or the **Dynamic** pack is not recommended in the following situations:

- One of the special modes (other than the standard mode) of Advanced Grip Control is on.
- Low fuel level reached.
- Low AdBlue level reached.

i Pressing this button has no effect when a trailer is connected.

Sport programme



In mode **D**, pressing this button activates the **Sport** programme. "S" appears in the instrument panel.

Dynamic pack



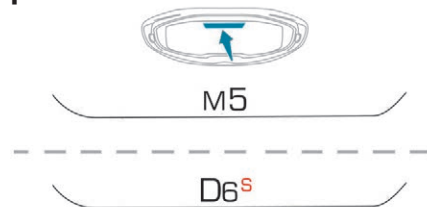
The orange indicator lamp in the button is on while the **Dynamic** pack is activated.

You can activate or deactivate the function:

- by pressing this button,
- or
- via the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, by modifying the setting for an ambience in the touch screen.

For more information on the **Dynamic Pack** and the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



With the ignition on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:

P: park.

R: reverse.

N: neutral.

D1...D6 or D8: automatic mode.

S: Sport programme or Dynamic pack.

M1...M6 or M8: manual mode.

-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

i If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into mode **P**. The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.

Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal. Never leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle with the engine running.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time – Risk of damage to the gearbox!

In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chocks supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

General points

To unlock the gearbox:

- from mode **P**:
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button, select another mode.
- from neutral **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
 - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
 - ☞ while continuing to press the brake pedal, select another mode.

To select reverse:

- ☞ slow down until you come to a stop,
- ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
- ☞ push forwards once or twice.

To select manual mode:

- ☞ with mode **D** selected in advance,
- ☞ press button **M**; the green indicator lamp in the button comes on.

To quit manual mode:

- ☞ push forwards once to go back to **D**.

or

- ☞ press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

To put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, engine off:

- ☞ with the vehicle stationary, engine running, select **N**,
- ☞ switch off the engine,
- ☞ within five seconds, switch the ignition on again,
- ☞ with your foot on the brake pedal, push the selector forwards or backwards once to confirm **N** and manually release the electric parking brake,
- ☞ switch off the ignition.

If you exceed the time limit of five seconds, the gearbox engages mode **P**; you must then restart the procedure.

i If you open the driver's door when mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the exterior temperature, the profile of the road, the load on the vehicle and the style of driving.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached. When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

The steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the road and engine speed permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the road speed and engine speed permit.

If the engine speed is too high or too low, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is displayed.

Moving off

From mode **P**:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- ☞ Push once or twice rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- ☞ Press the brake pedal firmly.
- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.

Then, from **P** or **N**:

- ☞ Release the brake pedal.
- ☞ Accelerate progressively to automatically release the electric parking brake.
- ☞ With the parking brake released, the vehicle then moves off.

i In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), it is recommended that the engine be allowed to run for a few minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically, with the exception of **N**, in which case mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (allowing the change to free-wheel).

Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.



The corresponding indicator lamps for the selector panel and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as the ones in the instrument panel.

Operating faults

Malfunction of the gearbox



This is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, when the ignition is switched on.

The gearbox switches to back-up mode: drive mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering-mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a pronounced jolt when engaging reverse. This does not present any risk for the gearbox. Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit. Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Malfunction of the selector

In the event of a minor fault



You are alerted by this warning lamp lighting up, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

In certain cases, the selector lamps may not come on, but the state of the gearbox is still displayed in the instrument panel. Drive cautiously and go to a PEUGEOT or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a serious fault



You are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp.



Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from the traffic, and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. When the ignition is switched off, the gearbox goes into mode **P** automatically.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This system only operates when:

- the vehicle has been brought to a complete stop, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- with the driver's door closed.



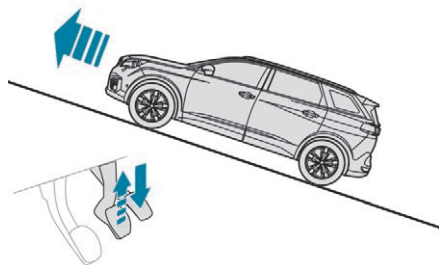
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp and the indicator lamp **P** in the lever of the electric parking brake control are on fixed (not flashing).



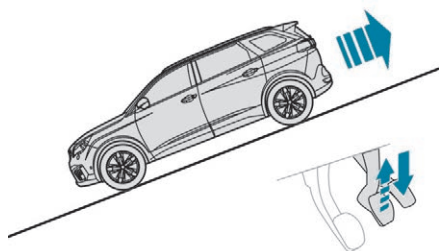
The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, use of the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its function.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:

- if you are in first gear or in neutral with a manual gearbox,
- provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Malfunction



If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Dynamic pack

This pack influences:

- the acoustic ambience of the engine,
- the level of power assistance for the steering,
- acceleration.
- handling gear transitions with the automatic gearbox,
- the display on the instrument panel of information about the dynamic parameters of the vehicle ("PERSONAL" mode).

Activation/Deactivation



Press this button; the orange indicator lamp in the button comes on to confirm activation of the function.



The Dynamic pack is also managed by the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function.

For more information on the **i-Cockpit Amplify** function, refer to the corresponding section.

If the orange indicator lamp flashes, activation is not available (e.g. if Park Assist is selected).
If the indicator lamp continues flashing for a long time, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Displays

To show this information on the instrument panel, select the "PERSONAL" mode and then the type of information required.

This telemetry information (power output, turbocharger pressure, torque, longitudinal and lateral acceleration, etc.) is given as a guide only.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine.)

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gear efficiency recommendations are for information only. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

i With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

The information is displayed in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

i With a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.



4

i The system adapts its gear efficiency recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging a lower gear,
- engaging reverse.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.).

The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.

The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

! Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) for 1.5 BlueHDi versions, or with the vehicle stationary for 1.2 PureTech, 1.6 BlueHDi and 2.0 BlueHDi 150 versions, when you place the gear lever in neutral and release the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox**, at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) for 1.5 BlueHDi and 2.0 BlueHDi 180 versions, or with the vehicle stationary for other versions, when you depress the brake pedal or place the gear selector to mode **N**.

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

I For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear. The Stop & Start does not affect the operation of vehicle systems such as braking, power steering, etc.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the "START/STOP" button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) make this necessary to ensure control of a system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode



This indicator lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **With an automatic gearbox**:
 - gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
 - or gear selector in mode **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**,
 - or when you engage reverse.

Special cases: START mode triggered automatically

As a safety measure or to maintain comfort levels in the vehicle, START mode is triggered automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,

- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) with the 2.0 BlueHDi 180 version with automatic gearbox in mode **D**, or 2 mph (3 km/h) with other versions,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some specific conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.) require it for the control of a system or the vehicle.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation/Reactivation

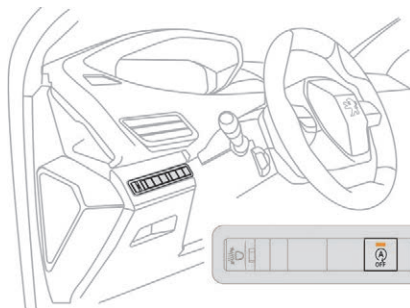
In certain circumstances, such as the need to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.

If the engine is in STOP mode, it restarts immediately.

The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

With the button on the dashboard



Press this button; the associated orange indicator lamp comes on.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel.

Pressing the button again reactivates the system; the associated indicator lamp goes off. The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

With the button on the touch screen



Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving functions**" then the "**Stop & Start**" tab.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this indicator lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel.

A new selection reactivates the system. The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message.

! Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



! Driving on flooded roads

Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system. For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the engine may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on. It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again with the key or the "**START/STOP**" button.

! The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification.

All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressures in the four tyres, once the vehicle is moving. It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed**. The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the inflation pressure of one or more tyres.

! The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres worsens road-holding, lengthens braking distances, causes premature wear of the tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.



The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.



Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).

Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.



Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert



This warning is indicated by continuous illumination of this lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.
- ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

or

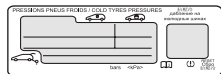
- ☞ In case of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).



The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressures of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.

The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

- ☞ Select the **"Tyre inflation"** menu.
- ☞ Select the **"Reinitialisation"** function.
- ☞ Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

Reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

Touch screen



Reinitialisation of the function is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ In this menu, select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab.
- ☞ In the page, select the **"Under-inflation initialisation"** function.
- ☞ Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Operating fault



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system. A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

Memorising speeds

Linked to the speed limiter/programmable cruise control, this function allows speed settings to be registered which will then be offered as settings for two systems: the speed limiter (a maximum speed) and the cruise control (cruising speed).

You can memorise up to 5 speed limits in the system.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

Monochrome screen C



Reinitialisation of the function is done in the **"Personalisation-configuration"** menu of the screen.

- ☞ Select the **"Define the vehicle parameters"** menu.
- ☞ Select the **"Driving assistance"** menu.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

Memorising speeds



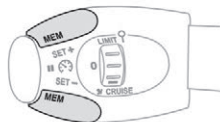
This function can be accessed in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select the **"Driving functions"** tab.
- ☞ Select the **"Adjusting Speeds"** function.
- ☞ Press **"ON"** to activate the function.
- ☞ Tick the speed settings **1 to 5** that you want to use.
- ☞ Select the speed setting you want to change.

✕		
		⏪
1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	9
	0	
✓		

- ☞ Enter the new value using the numeric keyboard and confirm.
- ☞ By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

"MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the associated section.

Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation

This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

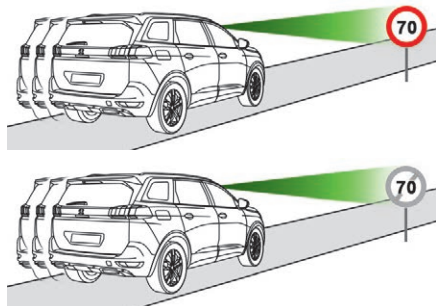
The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

! The units for the speed limits (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.
It should be taken into account so that you observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic. It is possible for the system not to display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.

Principles



This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

The system also processes speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! It is necessary to update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate information on speed limits from the system.

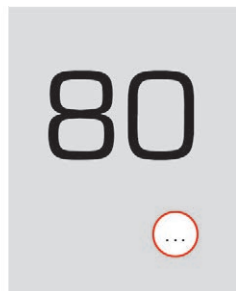
Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.

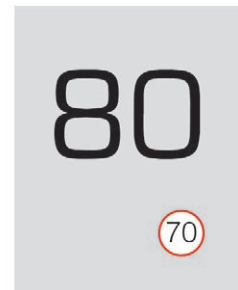
Displays on the instrument panel



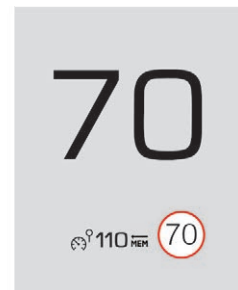
1. Speed limit indication.
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.



"MEM" flashes, accompanied by a message – with speed limiter or cruise control activated – the system suggests recording the speed limit as a new speed setting.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- trailer, caravan,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- hidden road signs (other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

Memorising the speed setting

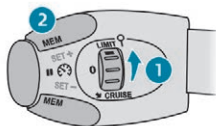
This memorise function is in addition to the display of **Recognition of speed limit signs**.



The driver can choose to adapt the speed setting to the speed limit suggested, by pressing the memorise button for the speed limiter, the standard cruise control and the adaptive cruise control with Stop function. This speed setting then replaces the previous speed setting for the speed limiter and/or cruise control.

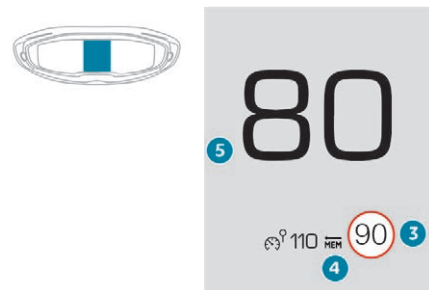
i For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control**, or **Adaptive cruise control with Stop function**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display on the instrument panel

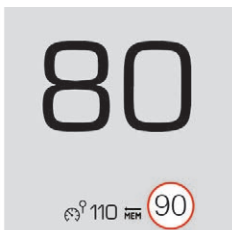


3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed

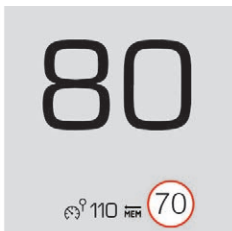


☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.



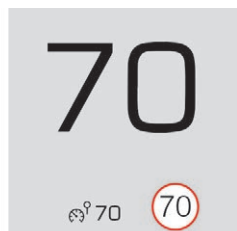
On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and **MEM** flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

i If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the speed limit sign recognition system, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.



☞ Make an **initial** press on button **2** to request saving of the speed suggested.

A message is displayed to confirm the request.



☞ Press button **2** **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

Speed limiter



System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

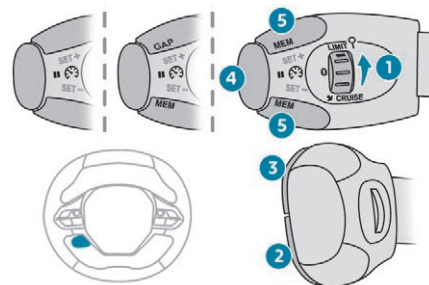
The speed limiter is **switched on** manually. The minimum programmed speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.



The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

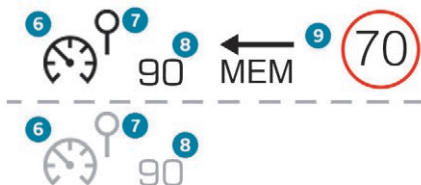
Steering mounted control



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed value.
3. Increase the programmed value.
4. Speed limiter On/Pause.
5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable speed limiter
or
Use the speed suggested by the speed limit signs recognition system.

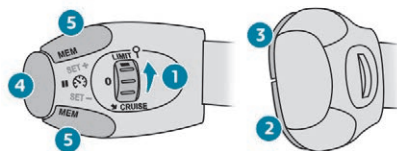
For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation**, refer to the associated sections.

Displays on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter On/Off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit sign recognition system (depending on version).

Switching on



- ☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**LIMIT**" position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the speed limiter setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit sign recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "0" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control



System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually. It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher.

With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of the selector in mode **D** or of second gear or higher in mode **M**.

i Speed regulation remains active after changing gear on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

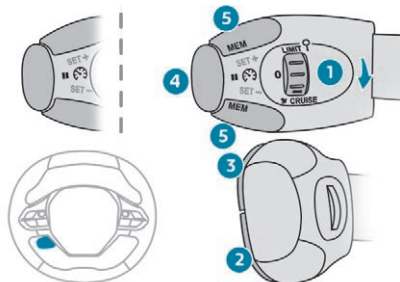
The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):

- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

! The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

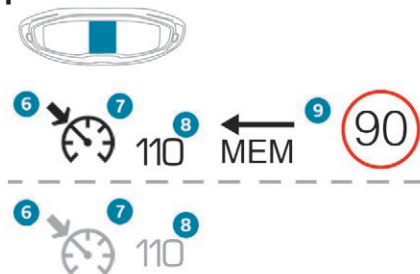
Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lower the cruise setting.
3. Set the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raise the cruise setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Depending on version:
Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable cruise control
or
Use the speed suggested by the speed limit signs recognition system.

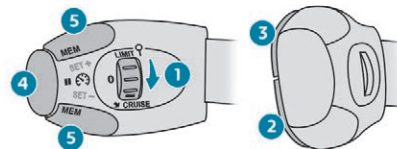
For more information on **Memorising speeds** or **Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation**, refer to the associated sections.

Displays on the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.
9. Speed suggested by the speed limit sign recognition system (depending on version).

Switching on



- Turn thumbwheel 1 to "CRUISE" to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



- To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button 2 or 3: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

You can release the accelerator pedal.



- Pressing button 4 temporarily interrupts the function (pause).



- Pressing button 4 again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the speed limit sign recognition system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,

- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.



To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal. Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.

To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "0" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and at an adequate safe distance.

Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow, etc.).

In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the cruise speed set: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Adaptive cruise control



This system provides the following functions:

- Automatic regulation of the vehicle speed at the value programmed by the driver.
- With a manual gearbox, automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front.
- With an automatic gearbox, automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front, which may cause your vehicle to come to a complete stop.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.



To do so, it has a camera located at the top of the windscreen and a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works on **moving vehicles**, driving in the **same direction** as your vehicle.

Principle of operation

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.

If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system (for versions fitted with an automatic gearbox).

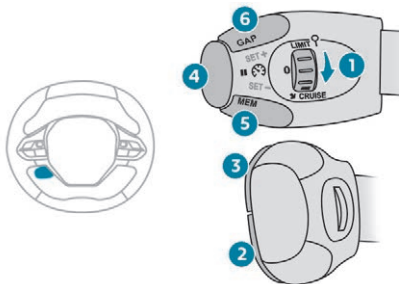
If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

i The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated with deceleration of the vehicle.

! The adaptive cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. It is recommended that you always keep your feet close to the pedals. The driver must be ready to take back control of their vehicle at any time, using the brake or accelerator pedal as appropriate.

Steering mounted control

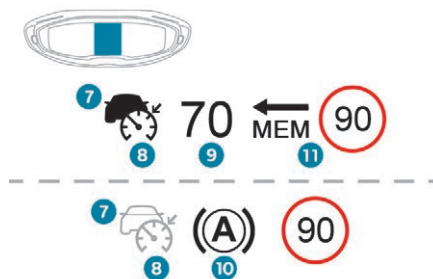


1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Raise the speed setting.

4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the speed limit signs recognition system (MEM).
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

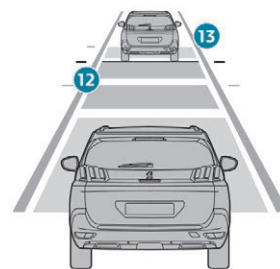
For more information on **Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays on the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence/absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation/deactivation.
9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary.
11. Speed suggested by the speed limit recognition system.

If a vehicle is detected, the symbol 7 is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol 7 is empty. In cruise control activated mode, the symbol 8 appears in green. By default, the symbol 8 appears in grey.

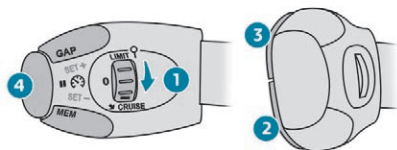


12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of vehicle detected by the radar.

This information is visible in the instrument panel in the "DRIVING" display mode.

Switching on

The cruise control is **switched on** manually. The speed of the vehicle must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h). With an automatic gearbox: in mode **D** or **M**.



☞ With the engine running, turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode: the function is paused (displayed in grey).

☞ Vehicle moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control starts operating (displayed in green).

By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "**Normal**" (2 dashes).

Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver.

Pause

The adaptive cruise control can be **paused** manually by:

- action by the driver:
 - On button **4** (Pause).
 - On the brake pedal.
 - On the electric parking brake control.
 - By changing from mode **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.

- or automatically, if operation of the ESC system is triggered for reasons of safety.

! When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.

To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate to reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

As a safety measure, wait until the current speed reaches the speed setting to reactivate the function by pressing button **4**.

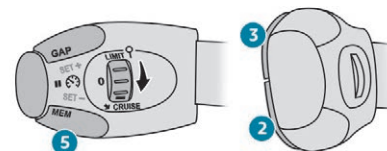
! Versions fitted with an automatic gearbox

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system above 19 mph (30 km/h) by pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**.

If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a few minutes.

Modification of the speed setting



Engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

Modification from the current speed

- ☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to raise or lower the setting in steps of 1 mph (km/h).
- ☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to raise or lower the setting in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

! Take care: the maintained press on button **2** or **3** will cause a very quick change in the speed of your vehicle.

Modification from the speed limit sign recognition system

- ☞ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

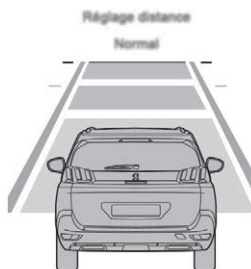
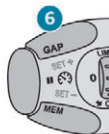
For more information on **Recognition of speed limit signs and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Modification of the programmed inter-vehicle distance

Three threshold settings are suggested for the inter-vehicle distance:

- "**Distant**" (3 dashes),
- "**Normal**" (2 dashes),
- "**Close**" (1 dash).



Engine running and cruise control selected (grey), you can change the inter-vehicle distance setting:

- ☞ Press button **6** to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance.
- ☞ By pressing button **6** repeatedly, cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.

The change then takes effect.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.

Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

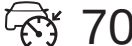
If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all necessary information on the instrument panel, you must previously select the "DRIVING" display mode.

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
 70	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
 70	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
 or 		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
	 (orange)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver must take back control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
	 (red)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.
 or 	 (orange)	"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).

Versions fitted with an automatic gearbox

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 (A) or  (A)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver must accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it with the speed of the vehicle above 19 mph (30 km/h).

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

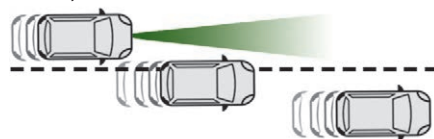
The driver must press the accelerator pedal to move off again, then reactivate the system above 19 mph (30 km/h), by pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following the immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a few minutes.

Operating limits

The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics. Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

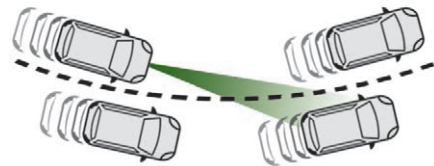
Cases of non-detection by the system:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).

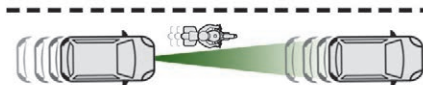


- Vehicles crossing the road lanes.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



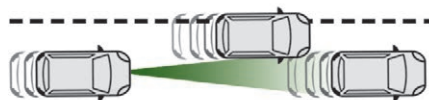
- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.
Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is encouraged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle sharply cuts in between your vehicle and the one in front.

The system must not be activated in the following situations:

- Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).
- Towing.
- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).

! Be particularly careful:

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

! The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface.

Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.

Do not activate the cruise control in an urban area where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the front bumper or the windscreen is damaged, or when the brake lamps have failed.

In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even attained: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

! The camera may be disrupted or not work in the following situations:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

! The system is not intended for the following situations:

- if the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),
- driving on a racing circuit,
- running on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

! Operation of the radar, located in the front bumper, may be impaired by the accumulation of dirt (dust, mud, etc.) or in certain weather conditions (snow, frost, etc.).

Clean the front bumper regularly.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the detection camera.

Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle, as this could obscure the camera.

! If the front bumper is to be repainted or touched up, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the cruise control, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp and the display of a message in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance Alert and Active Safety Brake



This system is a driving aid that includes three functions:

- Distance Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,

- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).

Distance Alert: it warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

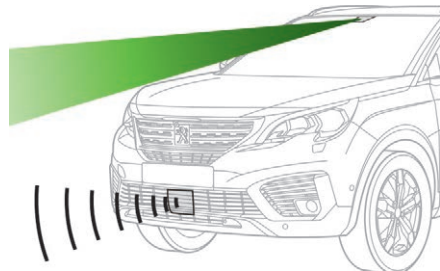
Intelligent emergency braking assistance: it supplements the braking action taken by the driver if this is inadequate.

Active Safety Brake: it intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

If the driver fails to act, it contributes towards avoiding a collision or limiting its severity by reducing the speed of your vehicle.

Activation and operating conditions

The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and depending on the version, a radar located in the front bumper.



The system is active from about 4 mph (7 km/h) and is deactivated below about 3 mph (5 km/h).

It takes account of:

- vehicles running in the same direction or stationary,
- pedestrians in the traffic lane (bicycles, motorcycles, animals and objects on the road are not necessarily detected).

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations. This system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a sense of deceleration.

Operating limits

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- when towing a trailer,

- when carrying long objects on roof bars or a roof rack,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- when the vehicle is being towed, with the engine running,
- when a "space-saver" type spare wheel is fitted (depending on version),
- following impact damage to the windscreen close to the detection camera,
- if the front bumper has been damaged (version with radar),
- if the brake lamps are not working.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay alert and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

Distance Alert

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.



Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.



Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

This level of alert is based on the time before collision. It takes account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

i Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

Important: alert level 1 is never displayed when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.

The current threshold can be modified via the vehicle configuration menu.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

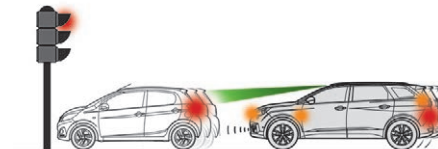
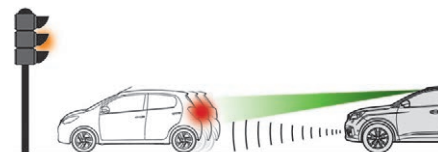
- "Distant",
- "Normal",
- "Close".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Using a camera and, depending on the version, radar, this function acts on the vehicle's braking system.



If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.



Important: if operation of the automatic emergency braking is triggered, you should take back control of your vehicle and **brake** with the pedal to add to or finish the automatic braking action.

The driver can take back control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

i The point at which braking is triggered may be adjusted depending on the driving actions of the driver, such as movement of the steering wheel or actions at the accelerator pedal.

i Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

! With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.
With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

Specific conditions for operation

The vehicle's speed must be between 3 mph and 53 mph (5 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.

The vehicle's speed must not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.

The vehicle's speed must not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.

The ESC system must not be faulty.

The DSC system must not be deactivated.

All passenger seat belts must be fastened.

Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

- !** The camera may be disrupted or not work in the following situations:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
 - dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
 - camera or radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: **"Driving aids camera: visibility limited, see user guide"**.
In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera. Clean the front bumper, especially around the radar, removing mud, snow, etc.

! If the front bumper is to be repainted or touched up, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

i The system is automatically deactivated after the use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the side brake lamps is detected.

Malfuction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Fatigue detection system

It is recommended that you take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

Depending on version, the function either has the "Driving time warning" only, or this combined with the "Driver inattention alert".

! The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. Do not take the wheel if you are tired.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu. For more information on the menu, refer to the section covering your screen in the "Instruments" section.

The state of the system stays in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driving time warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).



This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal. If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

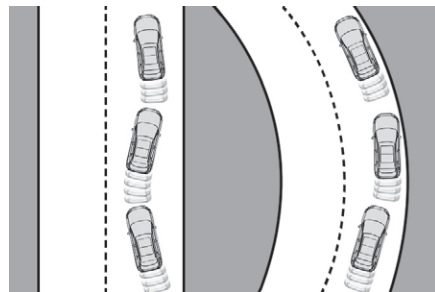
- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,

- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver inattention alert

Depending on version, the "Driving time warning" may be combined with the "Driver inattention alert".



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).



When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message **"Take care!"**, accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message **"Take a break!"**, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

i In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Lane Departure Warning System

System which, using a camera which recognises solid or broken lines, detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground.

To provide safe driving, the camera analyses the image then, if the driver's attention drops and the speed is higher than 37 mph (60 km/h), triggers a warning if there is an unexpected change of direction.

This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Activation/Deactivation

This function cannot be deactivated on versions without a touch screen.



Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the **"Driving functions"** then the **"Lane departure warning system"** tab.

The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection



If an unexpected change of direction is detected, you are alerted by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel and an audible signal.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.

Operating fault



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** The detection may be impeded:
- if the markings on the road are worn,
 - if there is little contrast between the markings on the road and the road surface,
 - if the windscreen is dirty,
 - in certain weather conditions: fog, heavy rain, snow, shade, bright sunlight or direct exposure to the sun (low sun, leaving a tunnel, etc.).

Active Lane Departure Warning System

Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground, this system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntary crossing of a line. This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 112 mph (65 and 180 km/h).

The carriageway must have at least one lane marking (solid or broken) on the ground.

The driver must hold the wheel with both hands.

The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.

The ESC system must be activated.

! This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver should remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances.

The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven on. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be taken back in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example). It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Operation

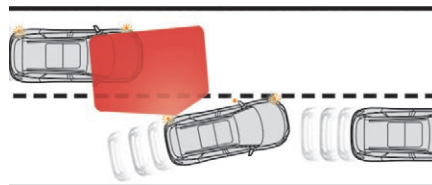
Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected, it makes the correction to the trajectory required to return the vehicle to its initial path.

The driver will then notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

i If the driver wishes to maintain the trajectory of the vehicle, they can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example). The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

However, with the "Blind Spot Monitoring System" activated, if the driver starts changing lane and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.

For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System**, refer to the corresponding section.

! If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all necessary information on the instrument panel, you must previously select the "DRIVING" display mode.

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON			System active, conditions not met: - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ESC deactivated or operation triggered, - "sporty" driving.
ON			Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON	 	 "Take back the wheel!".	- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- Speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

- !** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:
- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
 - dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
 - windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
 - lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks),
 - running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
 - roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:

- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling stand,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Activation/Deactivation



Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the **"Driving functions"** then the **"Lane assist"** tab.

The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operating fault



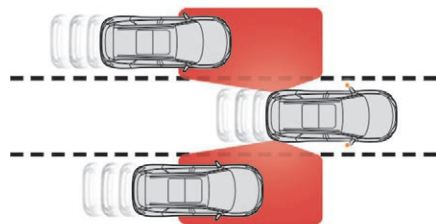
In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Risk of undesirable operation

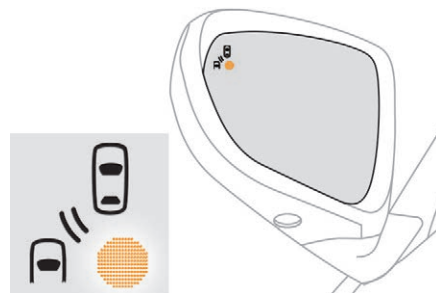
Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:

- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

Blind Spot Monitoring System



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,

- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This driving aid system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Activation/Deactivation



Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the **"Driving functions"** then the **"Blind spot sensors"** tab.



This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.



To deactivate the system, once again select **"Blind spot sensors"** in the **"Driving functions"** tab. The indicator lamp goes off.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by PEUGEOT.

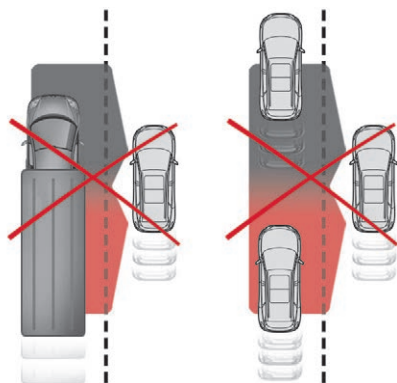
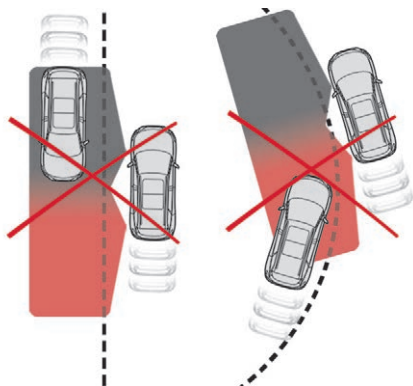
Operation

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by an orange warning lamp coming on in the relevant door mirror, as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected. The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,

- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not towing a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, safety barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is also in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.

Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning lamp coming on and the display of a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by PEUGEOT.

! **High pressure jet wash**
When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.

Conditions for operation

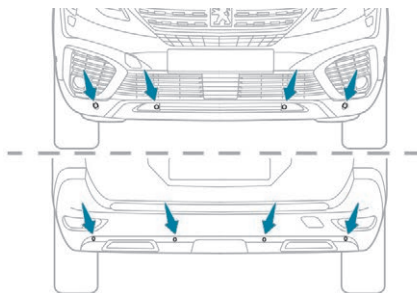
The following systems must be activated:



- Blind Spot Monitoring System,
- Active Lane Departure Warning System.

For more information on the **Blind Spot Monitoring System** and the **Active Lane Departure Warning System**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Parking sensors



Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

! This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle. They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre. During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.

This is confirmed by an audible signal.

The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance

BIP... BIP... BIP...

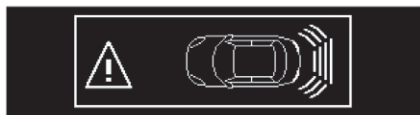


The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles; orange: close obstacles; red: very close obstacles).

When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

i The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle – in the vehicle trajectory, in front or behind.

Side parking sensors



Using four additional sensors located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers, the system records the position of fixed obstacles during the manoeuvre and signals them when they are located by the sides of the vehicle.

! Only fixed obstacles are signalled correctly. Moving obstacles detected at the beginning of the manoeuvre may be signalled mistakenly, while moving obstacles which appear at the sides of the vehicle and which were not previously recorded will not be signalled.

Deactivation/Activation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle parameters menu in the screen. The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

i The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the **Park Assist** system is measuring a space. For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.

- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

i High pressure washing
When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

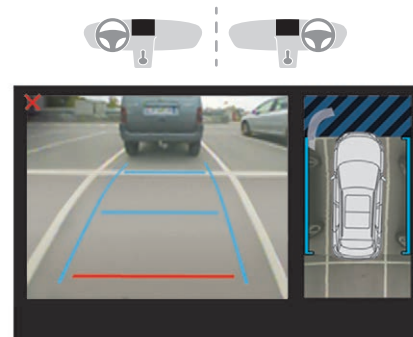
Operating fault



If a fault occurs when shifting to reverse, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal (short beep).

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

With the engine running, these systems allow views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using one camera for Visiopark 1 and two cameras for Visiopark 2.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

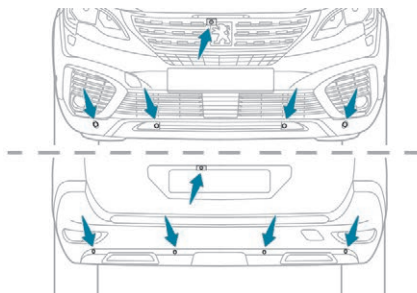
Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:

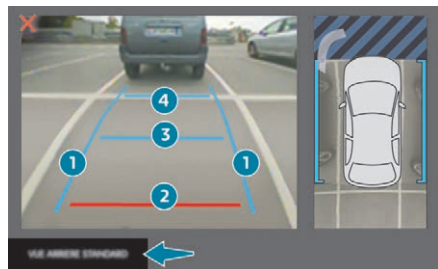
- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.

Recommendations on care

i In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

Visiopark 1 – Visiopark 2





The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

☞ Press the button in the bottom left-hand corner of the touch screen.

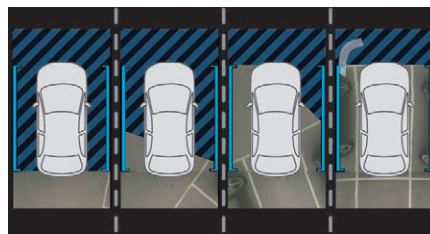
☞ Select the type of view:

- "Standard view".
- "180° view",
- "Zoom view",
- "AUTO view".

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



Using one or two cameras, the close surroundings of the vehicle are recorded whilst manoeuvring at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time, as the vehicle manoeuvre progresses.

This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.

This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

With Visiopark 2, the image is created using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.

When the function is activated, it is possible that the central view is not displayed. If the system is activated after the vehicle has already been driven, the central view may be completely displayed.

! This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i The images provided by the camera(s) may be distorted by the relief. In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Recommendations on care

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors and camera lenses are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

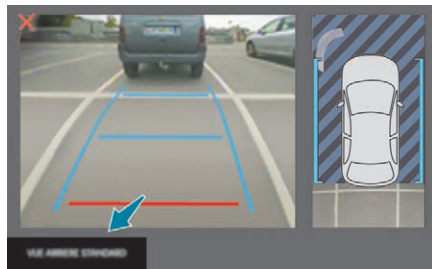
Check the cleanliness of the camera lenses regularly.

If necessary, clean the cameras with a soft, dry cloth.

When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the cameras and parking aid sensors.

Visiopark 1

Rear vision

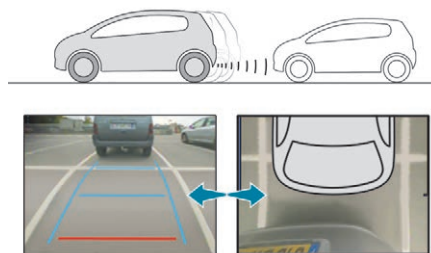


To activate the camera, located in the tailgate, engage reverse and keep the speed of the vehicle below 6 mph (10 km/h).

The system is deactivated:

- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- automatically on opening the tailgate,
- when shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

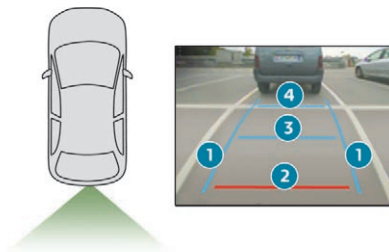
AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view to a view from above, as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



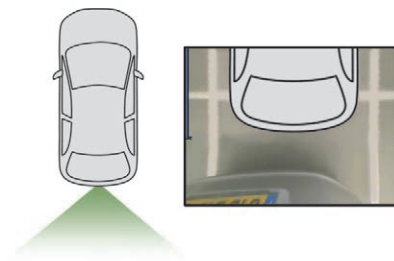
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Zoom view

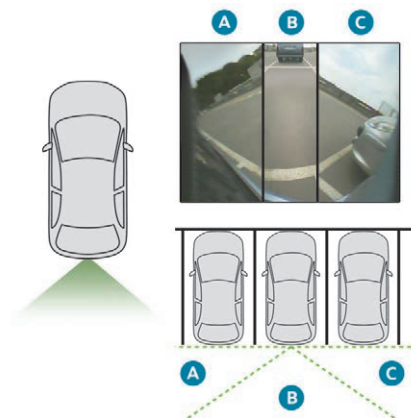


The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors. The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



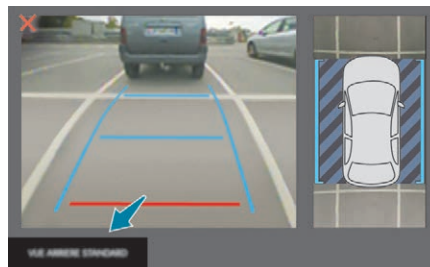
The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**. This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Visiopark 2

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the tailgate opening control. Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings in the touch screen, offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision), when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision), when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

Rear vision



The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

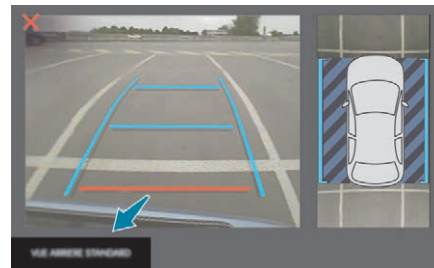
- automatically above about 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when shifting out of reverse (the rear view image is replaced by the front view image for 7 seconds),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

i If a trailer or a bicycle carrier is fitted to the towball, the zone behind the vehicle on the top view goes dark. The surroundings are reconstructed by the front camera only.

The rear vision views are similar to those for the Visiopark 1.

For more information on **Visiopark 1**, refer to the corresponding section.

Front and rear vision





With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated via the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen:

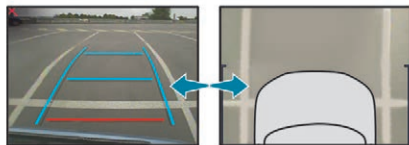
☞ Select "**Panoramic visual aid**".

AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

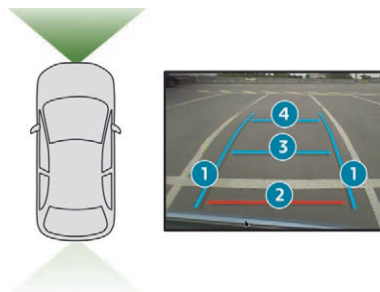
- automatically above about 19 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)),
- by pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default. Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from front view to the view from above as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

Standard view



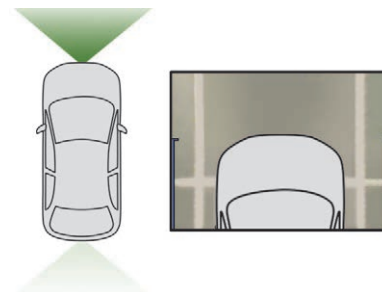
The area in front of your vehicle is displayed in the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Zoom view

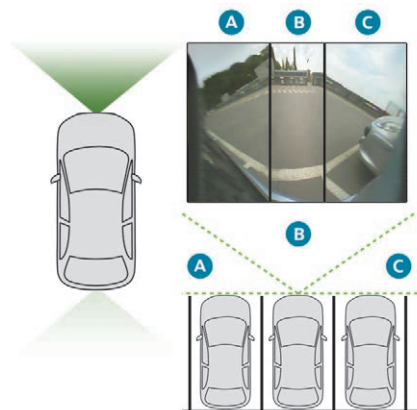


The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

i Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality. It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

The front and rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



The 180° view assists with exiting from a parking bay in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**. This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Park Assist

This system provides active assistance with parking: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space.

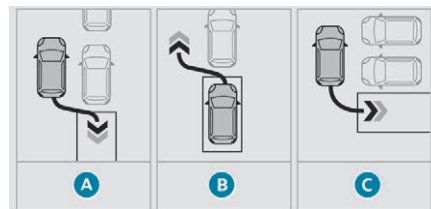
With a **manual gearbox**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch. With an **automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8)**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and gears.

During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

! This manoeuvring assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear throughout the manoeuvre. In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

i The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- A.** Entry into a parallel parking space.
- B.** Exit from a parallel parking space.
- C.** Bay parking.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could block the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) - Injury risk!

i When the Park Assist is active, it prevents the Stop & Start going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activating Park Assist restarts the engine.

i The Park Assist system takes control of the assistance for a maximum of 4 manoeuvre cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take control of the steering to carry out the manoeuvre.

! The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed in the instrument panel.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take control of the steering.

! You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

i The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away.

If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

! Activation of the Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Monitoring System.

i During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, Visiopark 1 and Visiopark 2 functions may come into operation. They facilitate monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the instrument panel. For more information on **Visiopark 1** and **Visiopark 2**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres

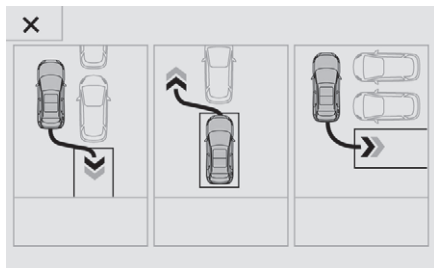
 When you have detected a parking space.



 Select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.

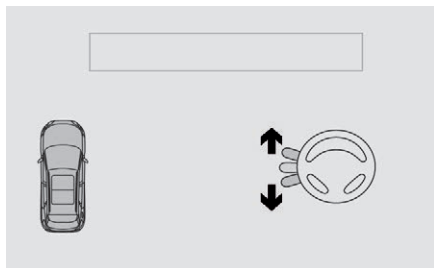


This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the system.

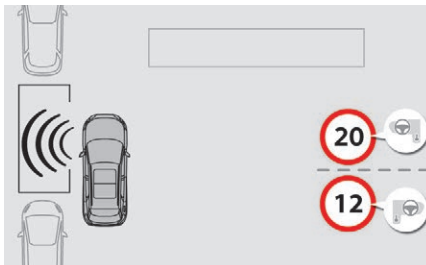


- ☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter parallel parking space"** on the touch screen.

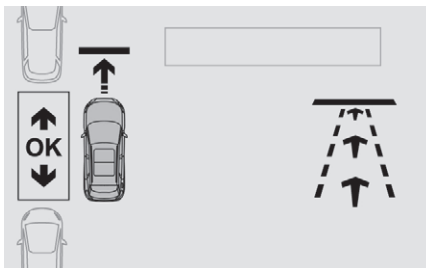
i To enter a parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



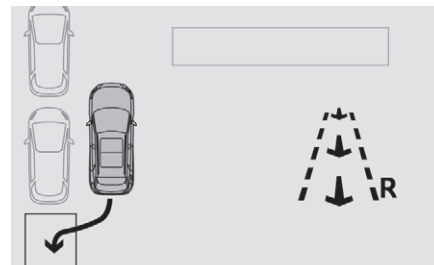
- ☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



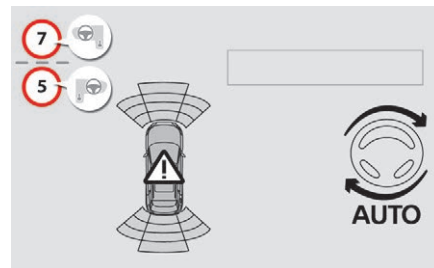
- ☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



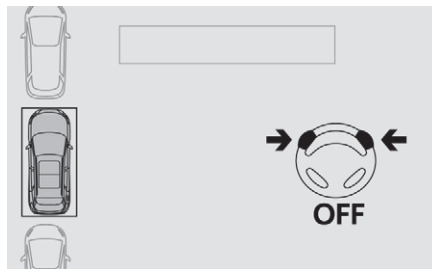
- ☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- ☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



- The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



- At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance in exiting from a parallel parking space

- When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.



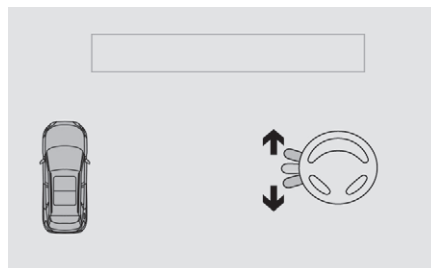
- Select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.



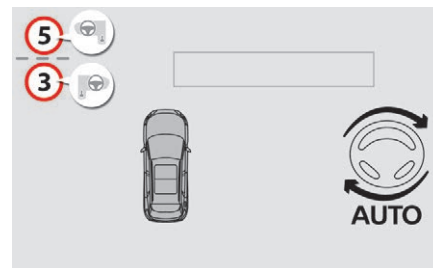
- This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the system.



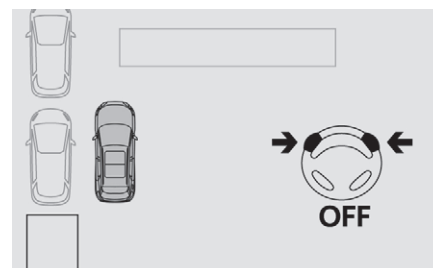
- Press "**Exit parallel parking space**" on the touch screen.



- Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.
- Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



- The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.

At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres

☞ When you have detected a parking space.



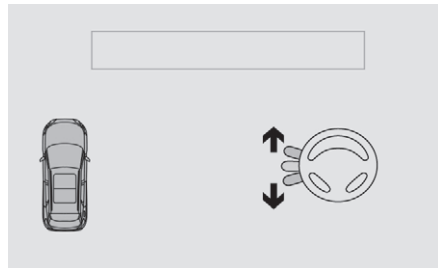
☞ Select **"Park Assist"** in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen to activate the function.



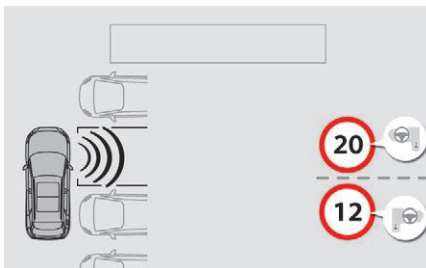
This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the system.



☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter bay parking space"** on the touch screen.

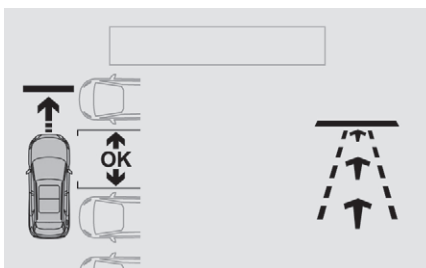


☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

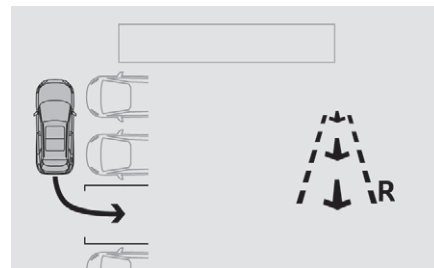


☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

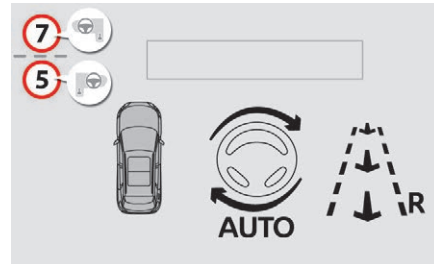
i When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.

Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

i During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 20 inches (50 cm) of an obstacle.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.

The system is deactivated automatically:

- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off and a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal.

The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.

i If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

Switching off

The system is switched off automatically:

- when towing a trailer, connected electrically,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.
Any object projecting beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (e.g. a ladder on the roof or a towball) will not be taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

i In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, ice or snow.
In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

High pressure jet washing

When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL

A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOT TOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017. To obtain these exceptional results, the Peugeot Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the Peugeot 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is an ultra-high performance lubricant, the result of collaboration between Peugeot and Total's R&D teams. Specially formulated for the engines in Peugeot vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO₂ emissions and provides efficient protection to keep your engine clean.

PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL



OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Fuel

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 56 litres.
Reserve level: 6 litres.

Low fuel level



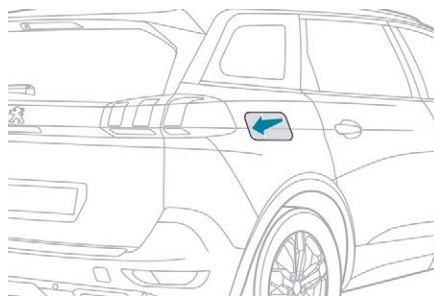
When the low fuel level is reached in the fuel tank, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel is left in the tank.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**. Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

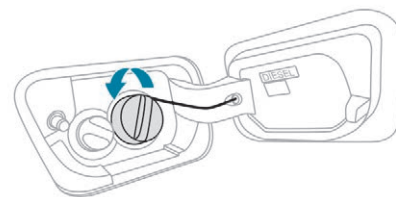
! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition using the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

Refuelling



A label on the inside of the fuel filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine type. Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge. Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.



To refuel in complete safety:

- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear part of the filler flap.
- ☞ Turn the filler cap to the left.
- ☞ Remove the filler cap and hook it onto the clip located on the inside of the filler flap.
- ☞ Fill up the tank completely, but **do not continue after the 3rd cut-off** of the nozzle; this could cause malfunctions.

Once you have finished refuelling:

- ☞ Refit the filler cap.
- ☞ Turn it to the right.
- ☞ Close the fuel filler flap.

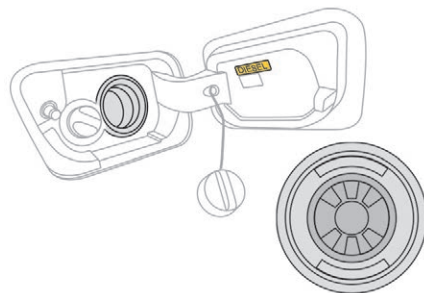
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country of sale.)

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into your Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

i It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

i Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

E5

E10

B7

B10

XTL

B20

B30

B20

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

B30

recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).



The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could entail an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

E5

Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.

E10



The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Towing device

Load distribution

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

📌 Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop. If the towbar is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

Important: for versions equipped with the motorised tailgate with Hands-Free Tailgate Access function, if a towing device other than a genuine PEUGEOT one is installed, it is imperative to visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the detection system: risk of Hands-Free Tailgate Access function failure.

Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towbar is used.

⚠ Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (ball joint) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

⚠ Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

⚠ **Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function**

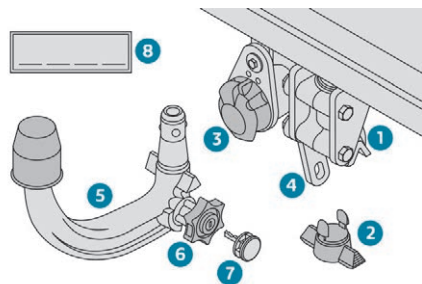
To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:

- deactivate the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu,
- or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

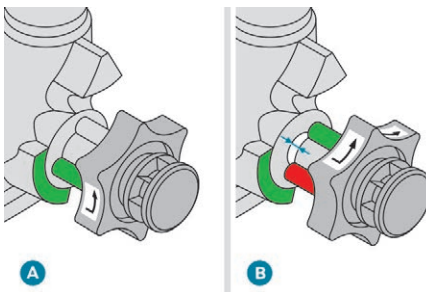
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

Presentation



1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Connection socket.
4. Safety eye.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Key reference label.



- A. Locked position** (the **green** marks are opposite each other); the wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).
- B. Unlocked position** (**red** mark opposite the **green** mark); the wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

! Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

i To know the **Technical data**, and, in particular, the towable weights for your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section. To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towbar system**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted, verifying the follow points:

- the green mark on the locking wheel is in line with the green mark on the towball,
- the locking wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach – accident risk!

! During use

Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball. Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle – the Gross Train Weight or GTW.

It is essential that the maximum authorised load be complied with on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may detach from the vehicle, which is a serious accident risk.

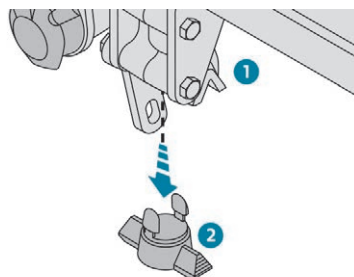
Check that the trailer lamps work correctly.

Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.

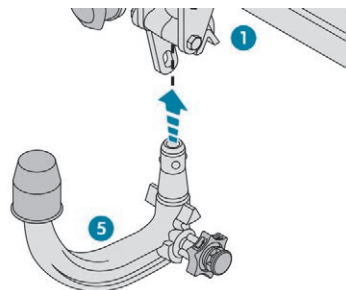
For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Following use

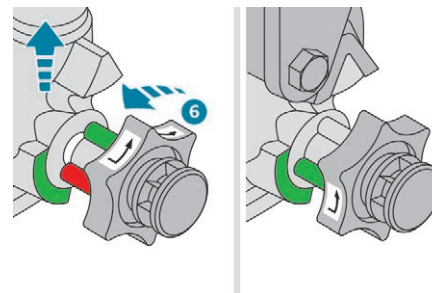
When travelling without a trailer or load on a towbar-mounted carrier, the towball must be removed and the protective plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly where the towball might obscure visibility of the number plate or its lighting.

Fitting the towball

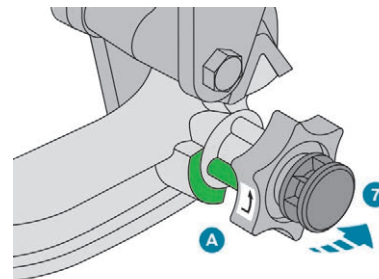
- ☞ Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug 2 from the towball carrier 1.



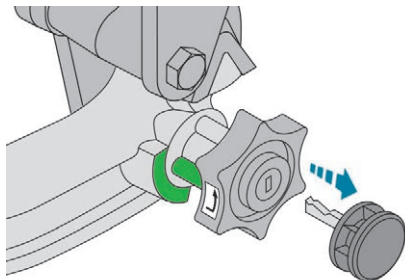
- ☞ Insert the end of towball 5 into carrier 1 and push it upwards; the locking will take place automatically.



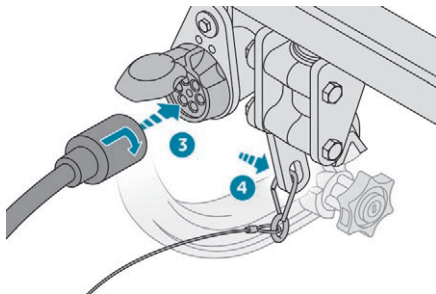
- ☞ The locking wheel 6 turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!



- ☞ Check that the mechanism has correctly locked in to place (position A).
- ☞ Close the lock 7 using the key.

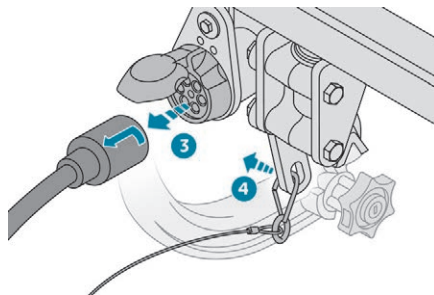


- ☞ Always remove the key. The key cannot be removed when the lock is open.
- ☞ Clip the cap onto the lock.

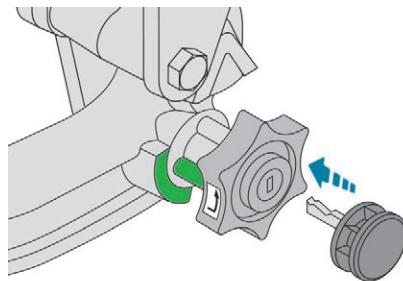


- ☞ Remove the protective cover from the towball.
- ☞ Attach the trailer to the towball.
- ☞ Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye 4 on the carrier.
- ☞ Insert the trailer plug and give it a quarter turn to connect it to socket 3 of the carrier.

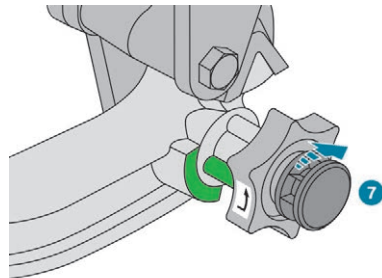
Removing the towball



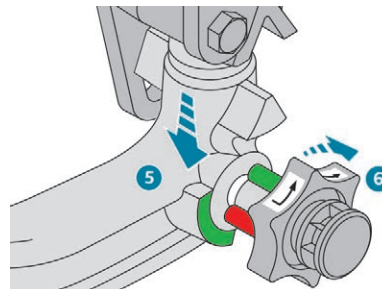
- ☞ Give a quarter turn and pull the trailer plug to disconnect it from socket 3 of the carrier.
- ☞ Detach the cable on the trailer from the safety eye 4 on the carrier.
- ☞ Detach the trailer from the towball.
- ☞ Refit the protective cover to the towball.



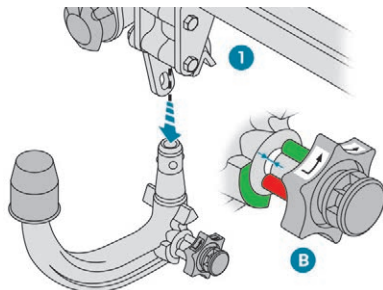
- ☞ Remove the cap from the lock and press it onto the head of the key.



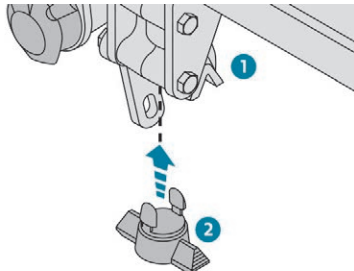
- ☞ Insert the key into the lock 7.
- ☞ Open the lock using the key.



- ☞ Hold towball 5 firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn locking wheel 6 fully in a clockwise direction; do not release the locking wheel.



- ☞ Extract the towball from the bottom of its carrier **1**.
- ☞ Release the locking wheel; this automatically stops in the unlocked position (position **B**).



- ☞ Refit protective plug **2** to carrier **1**.
- ☞ Carefully stow the towball in its bag away from knocks and dirt.

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean. Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

i Apply the label provided to a clearly visible area, close to the carrier or in the boot. Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towbar system.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,

Practical information

- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

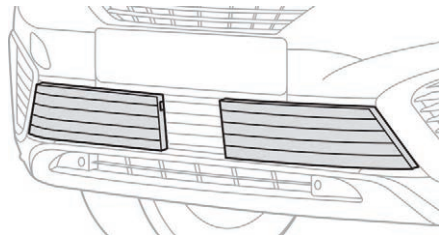
- ! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Very cold climate screen

(Depending on country of sale.)

Prevents snow from accumulating at the radiator cooling fan.

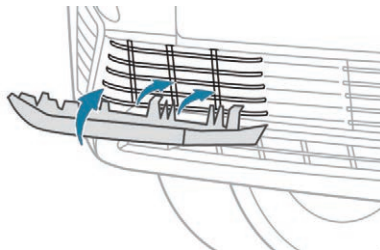
This removable device consists of two elements to be attached to the front bumper.



! For fitting and removing the screen, it is recommended that you get in touch with a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

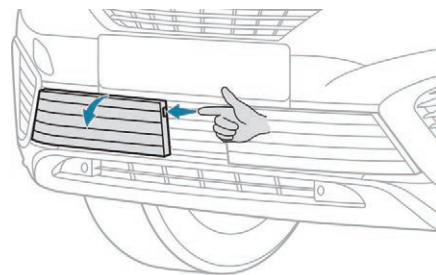
! Before fitting or removing a screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

Fitting



- ☞ Offer up the corresponding screen to the lower grille in the bumper.
 - ☞ First insert the two lower fixing brackets into the bumper.
 - ☞ Tilt the screen upwards until the three upper fixing brackets click into the bumper.
 - ☞ Check that the unit is firmly held by pressing its edge.
- Repeat these operations for the other screen.

Removing



- ☞ Insert a finger into the notch in the upper part of the screen.
 - ☞ Pull towards you to unclip the unit.
- Repeat these operations for the other screen.

- ! The very cold climate screen must be removed:
 - when the exterior temperature exceeds 10°C,
 - when towing,
 - at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/65 R17	9 mm
225/55 R18	9 mm
205/55 R19	9 mm
235/50 R19	cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Installation tips

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

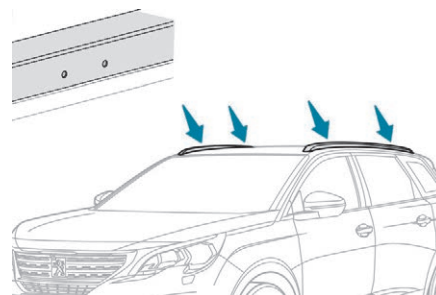
i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Fitting roof bars

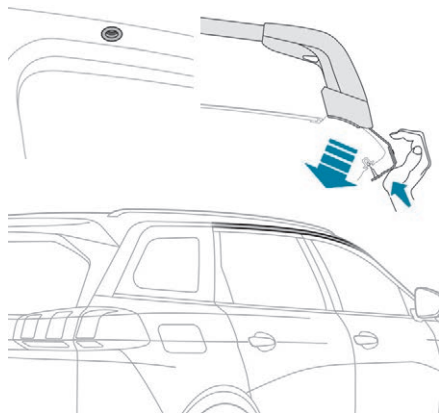
! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle. Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

Fitting directly to the roof



You must only attach the transverse bars to the four fixing points located in the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed. The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each fixing point.

i Maximum load distributed across the transverse roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **80 kg**.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the vehicle's anchorage points.

For transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle, refer to local legislation.

! Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.

Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.

Lash the load securely.

Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and the stability of the vehicle may be affected.

On a long journey, check the security of the load at every stop.

Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

! Sunroof

Check that the load does not pass below the roof bars so that it does not impede the movements of the sunroof.

Bonnet

! Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

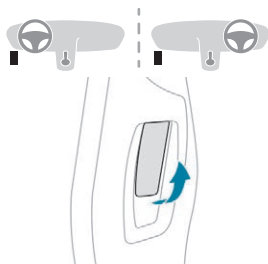
! When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.

When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.

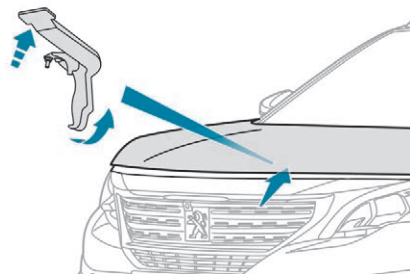
Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

! **The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.**

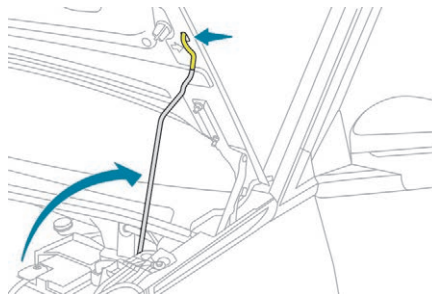
Opening



- ☞ Open the left-hand front door.
- ☞ Pull the release lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- ☞ Lift the safety catch and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

Engine compartment

This engine example is given for illustration purposes only.

The positions of the following elements may change:

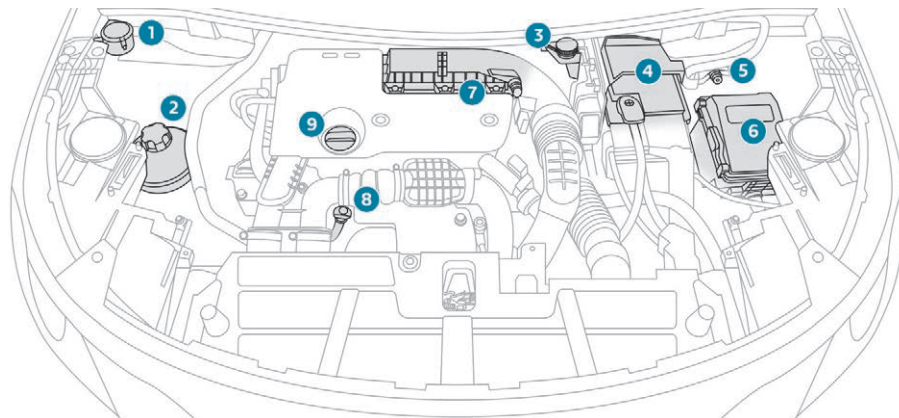
- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.
- Degassing screw.

1. Screenwash fluid tank.
2. Coolant tank.
3. Brake fluid tank.
4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Remote earth point (-).
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.
11. Degassing screw*.

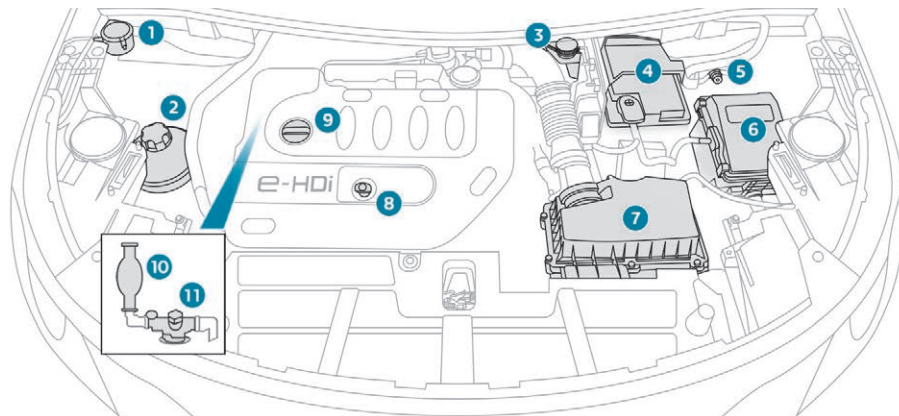
! The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure. All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on engine.

Petrol engine(s)



Diesel engine(s)



Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The fluid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

! Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

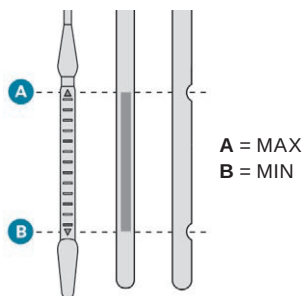
i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

The check and top up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine. The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it. If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan. In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.

Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Capacity of the tank:

- 5.3 litres for the "very cold climate" versions.
- 2.2 litres for other versions.

Fluid specification

The screenwash fluid must be topped up with a ready for use mix.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid with antifreeze must be used that is appropriate for the prevailing conditions, in order to preserve the elements of the system (pump, tank, ducts, etc.). Filling with pure water is prohibited under all circumstances (risk of freezing, limestone deposits, etc.).

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

AdBlue level

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up with AdBlue.

For more information on **AdBlue and the SCR system**, and in particular topping it up, refer to the corresponding section.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and depending on your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often, if necessary.**

i A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often, if necessary.**

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message about the risk of the filter clogging up.

i As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off. If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

i On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal. Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.

Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident! Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification. In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products. After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling the distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system preventing the engine starting will be triggered automatically.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.

i Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

i It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

- !** In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
 - Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
 - Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for private vehicles.

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. Bottles should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.

Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (stored in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.

In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid.

Ammonia vapour has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

Procedure

Before starting the top up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, in freezing weather, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

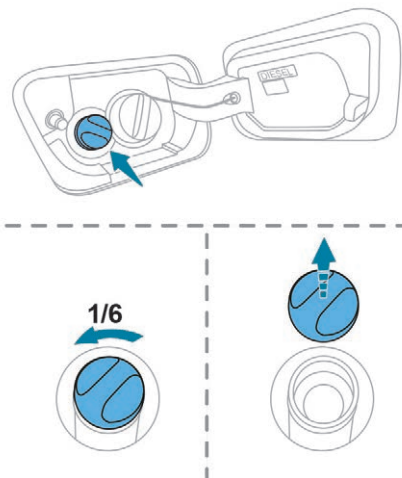
! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue**, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment**.
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
- or
- ☞ With Keyless Entry and Starting, press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.



- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank 1/6 of a turn anti-clockwise.
 - ☞ Release the blue cap.
- Or
- ☞ Obtain an AdBlue® container. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container or bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue tank.
 - ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! Important:

- To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:
 - To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
- Or
- Not to keep on trying after the nozzle's first automatic stop if you are refuelling at a filling station.
- If your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the alert messages and the impossibility of starting the engine – you must add at least 5 litres.

After refilling

- ☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank filler and turn it 1/6 of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
- ☞ Close the fuel filler flap.

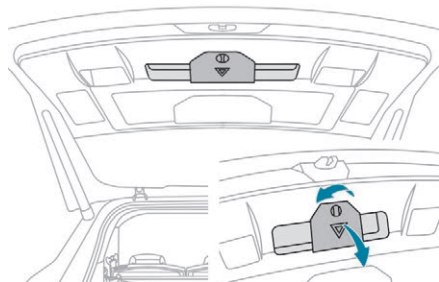


Do not dispose of AdBlue® containers in the household waste.
Place them in a suitable container or take them to your dealer.

Warning triangle

As a safety precaution, before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a triangle.

- ☞ Open the tailgate.
- ☞ Release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn anti-clockwise.

Assembling the triangle

For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment:

- ☞ remove the triangle from its case,
- ☞ unfold the legs,
- ☞ open out the two sides of the triangle,
- ☞ clip them together to complete the assembly.

i For other versions, refer to the instructions provided with the triangle.

Positioning the triangle

- ☞ Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

i For more information on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

With 1.6 BlueHDi and 2.0 BlueHDi 150 S&S engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

With 1.5 BlueHDi and 2.0 BlueHDi 180 S&S engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
 - ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
 - ☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
 - ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.
- If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

With 2.0 HDi engines

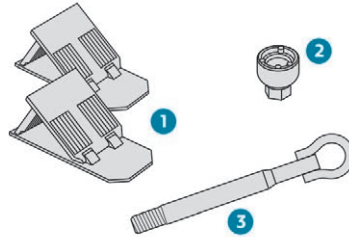
- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.
- ☞ Loosen the degassing screw.
- ☞ Use the priming pump until fuel appears in the transparent tube.
- ☞ Retighten the degassing screw.
- ☞ Operate the starter until the engine starts (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- ☞ Put it back in place, clip in the cover and ensure it is clipped in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with the vehicle. Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- temporary puncture repair kit,
- spare wheel.

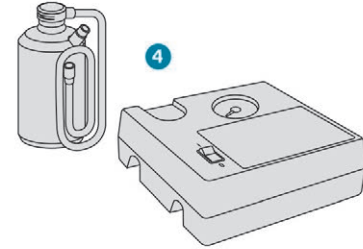
List of tools



1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment). Used for adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
3. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

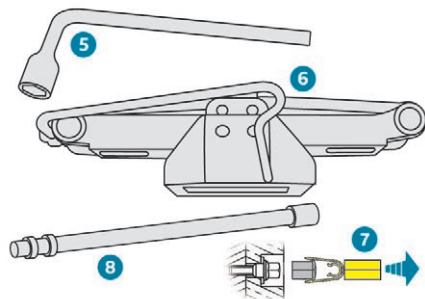
For versions with a temporary puncture repair kit:



4. Temporary puncture repair kit. Contains a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant to temporarily repair the wheel and adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

For versions with a spare wheel:



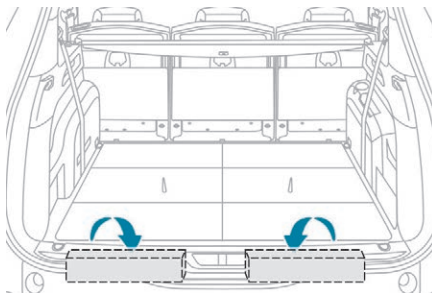
5. Wheelbrace.
For removing the hub cap and removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle.
Used to raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover remover (depending on equipment).
For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.
8. Wheelbrace extension.
For slackening/tightening the spare wheel carrier nut.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

Access to the tools



Some of the tools are stored beneath the floor against the boot sill.

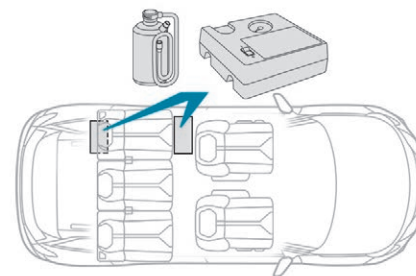
The left box contains the wheelbrace and its extension piece.

The right box contains the wheel chocks and the towing eye.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ fold the concertina boards back,
- ☞ install the third row seats,
- ☞ unclip the required tools from the boot sill trim.

For versions with a temporary puncture repair kit



Model without storage box

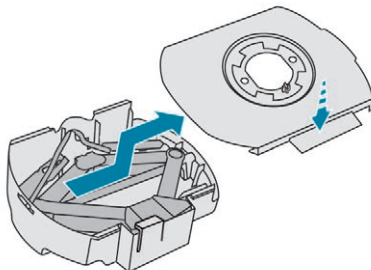
This kit, stored in a bag, is installed behind the second row left-hand seat.

- ☞ Fold the seat backrest onto the cushion to access the bag.

Model with storage box

This kit is installed in the storage box, located in front of the left-hand seat on the second row.

- ☞ Open the storage box cover to access the kit.

For versions with a spare wheel

This tool box is installed at the centre of the spare wheel beneath the vehicle. It contains the jack and the wheel bolt cover removal tool.

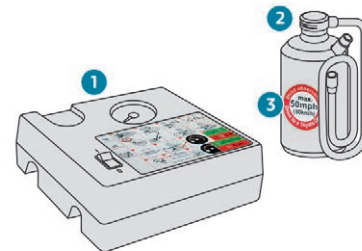
- ☞ First, access the spare wheel.
- For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.
- ☞ Press the tab to unlock the cover.
- ☞ While keeping the tab pressed in, slide the cover to the middle and remove it.

Temporary puncture repair kit

- i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage. It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

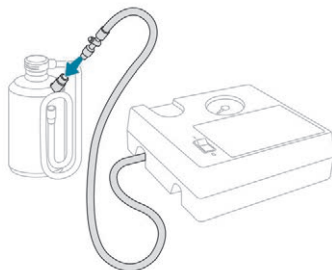
- i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Composition of the kit

1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

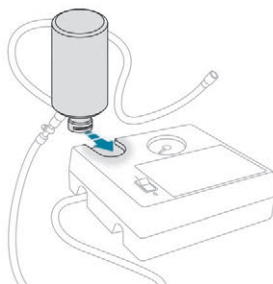
Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



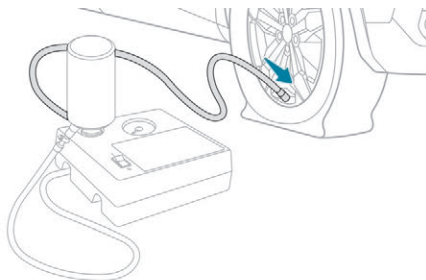
- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

! Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.

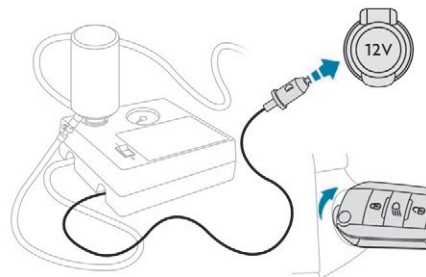


- ☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at position "O".
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



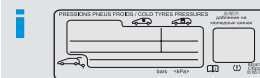
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V sockets located at the front of the vehicle and in the boot can be used to power the compressor.
The 12 V socket located at the back of the centre console is not suitable for this purpose.



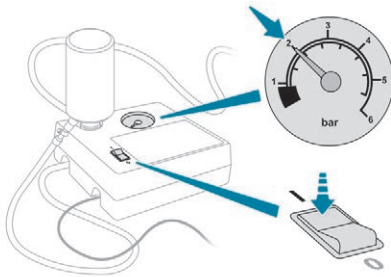
- ☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.



- ☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to position "I" until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe of the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Refit the cap on the valve.

- ☞ Remove the kit.
- ☞ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

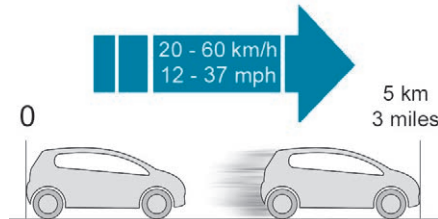
! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children.

The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.

Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



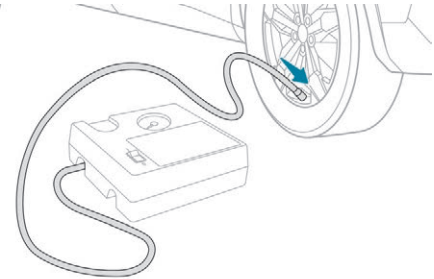
- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

- i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

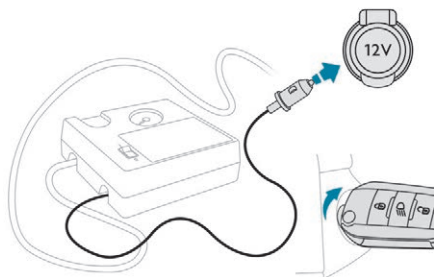
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.

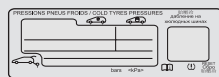
In the event of a breakdown

- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at position "O".
- ☞ Fully uncoil the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.

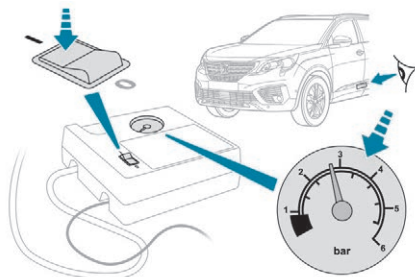


- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

! Only the 12 V sockets located at the front of the vehicle and in the boot can be used to power the compressor. The 12 V socket located at the back of the centre console is not suitable for this purpose.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

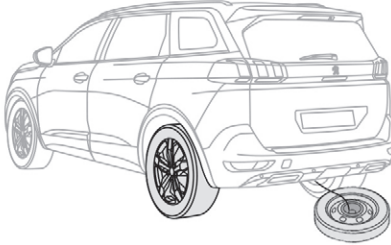
! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

- i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

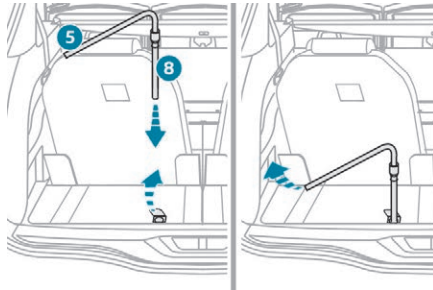
Access to the spare wheel



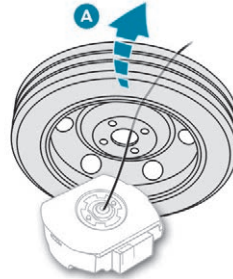
The spare wheel is held by a winch system underneath the back of the vehicle.

i Only a "space-saver" type spare wheel may be fixed beneath the vehicle.

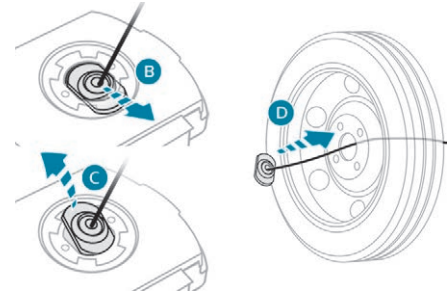
Taking out the spare wheel



- ☞ Fold the concertina board and install the third row seat, on the left-hand side (if your vehicle is equipped with it).
- ☞ Lift the pre-cut section of carpet to remove the fixing winch nut from the spare wheel.
- ☞ With extension piece **8** put on the edge of wheelbrace **5**, turn the nut in the "tightening" direction to unwind the winch cable until the spare wheel is flat on the ground. Unwind the length needed for an easy access to the wheel.

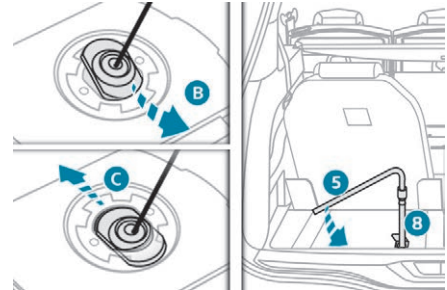


- ☞ Pull out the wheel and box assembly from the rear of the vehicle.
- ☞ Straighten the spare wheel to access the tool box (**A**).



- ☞ Detach the connecting piece from the cover of the tool box (**B – C**).
- ☞ Pass the connecting piece through the wheel hub to release it (**D**).

Tool storage

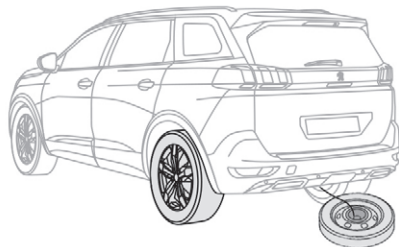


- ☞ Refit the appropriate tools in the box and close the cover again.
- ☞ Place the tool box on the ground.

- ☞ Insert the connecting piece into the tool box hole (B – C).
- ☞ Reel in the winch by loosening the winch control nut with wheelbrace 5 and extension piece 8: once the cable is completely reeled in, you should no longer feel any resistance.
- ☞ Store the rest of the tools in the storage areas in the boot sill trim.

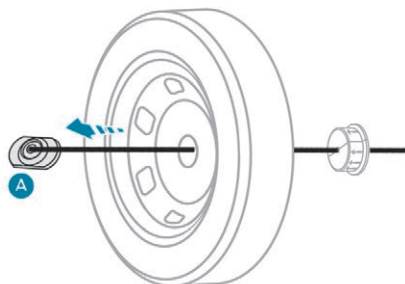
! The punctured wheel cannot be stored beneath the vehicle.
It must be placed in the boot. Use a pad to protect the inside of the boot.

Putting the winch and spare wheel back in place

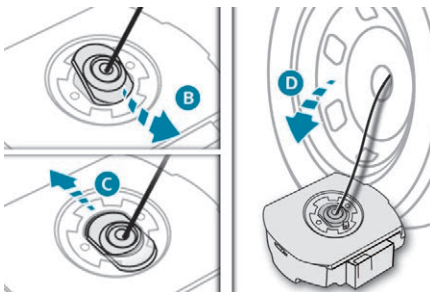


- ☞ Place the appropriate tools in the box and close the cover again.
- ☞ Place the tool box on the ground.

! When the spare wheel is fitted in place of a wheel with a punctured tyre, the winch and tool box must be placed beneath the vehicle again before restarting.

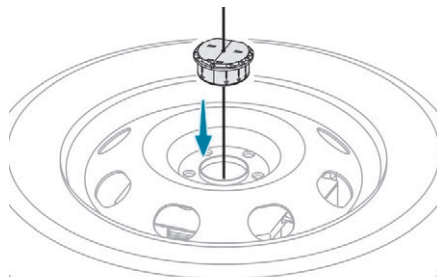


- ☞ Straighten the wheel.
- ☞ Pass the connecting piece through the wheel hub (A).

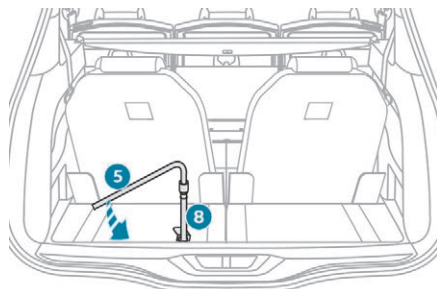


- ☞ Insert the connecting piece into the tool box hole (B – C).

- ☞ Centre and position the spare wheel on the tool box (D).



- ☞ Insert the centring guide into the wheel hub.
- ☞ Place the wheel/box assembly beneath the rear end of the vehicle.



- ☞ Refit the wheel/box assembly beneath the vehicle by "loosening" the winch control nut with wheelbrace 5 and extension piece 8.

- ☞ Tighten it fully. When the cable is completely reeled in, turning the nut no longer encounters resistance.
- ☞ Check that the wheel is properly flattened against the floor.

Removing a wheel

i Wheel with wheel trim

When removing the wheel, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

When refitting the wheel, after tightening the wheel bolts, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and with a manual gearbox, engage first gear so as to lock the wheels.

Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed to be in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and with an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** so as to lock the wheels.

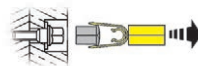
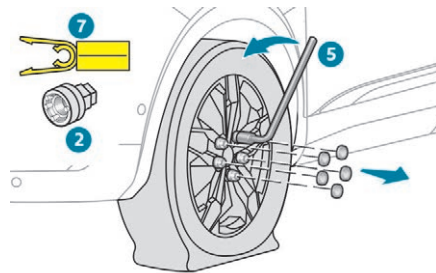
Check that the parking brake warning lamps in the instrument panel are on fixed (not flashing).

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

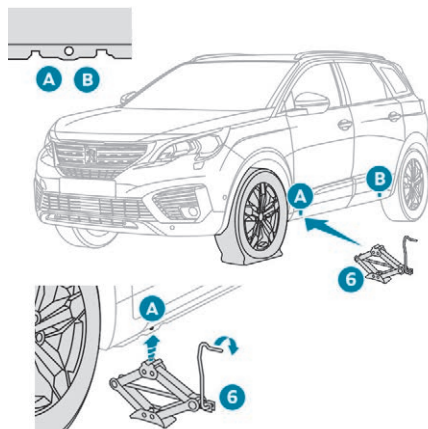
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

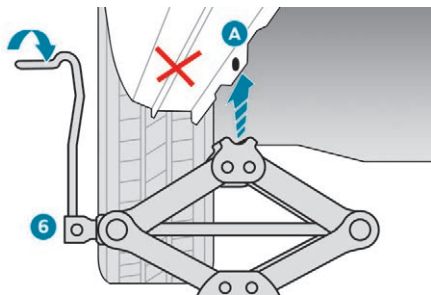
In the event of a breakdown



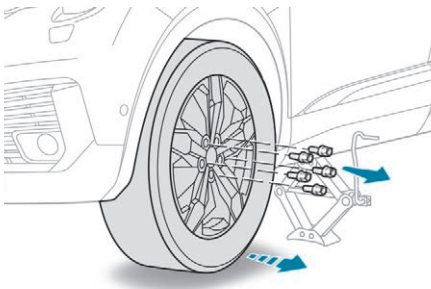
- ☞ To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool **7** (alloy wheels).
- ☞ Fit the security socket **2** on the wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt.
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- ☞ Place the foot of the jack **6** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ☞ Extend the jack **6** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.

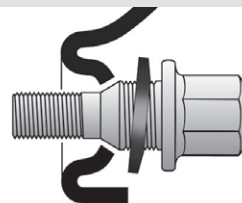


- ☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop – Risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack dropping – Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel

i



Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

After changing a wheel

! With a "space-saver" type spare wheel

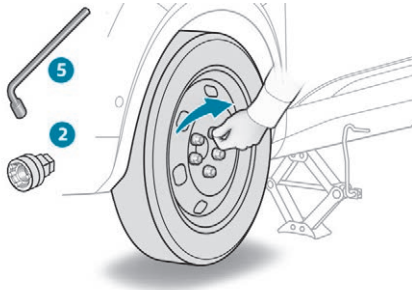


The following is recommended:

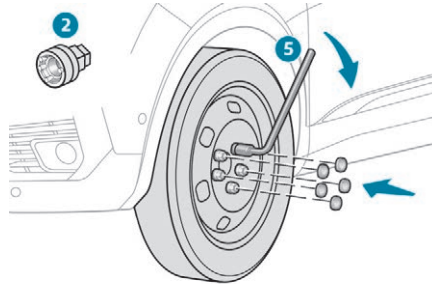
- deactivate some driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control with Stop function, etc.), as indicated on the label attached to the wheel,
- do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

! Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.
Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

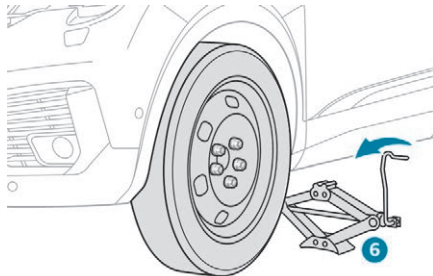
8



- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 5 fitted with the security socket 2.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace 5 only.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace 5 fitted with the security socket 2.
- ☞ **Tighten** the other bolts using wheelbrace 5 only.
- ☞ Refit the bolt covers to the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack 6 and detach it.

Changing a bulb

- !** The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
 - ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
 - ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
 - ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

- !** Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!
 - ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.
- It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.
- Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

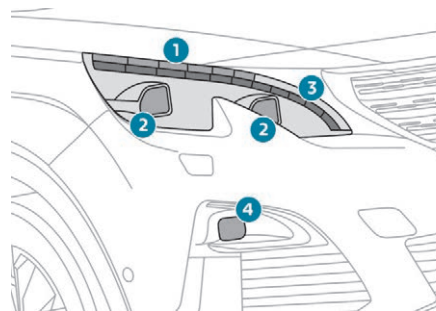
i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

! **Light emitting diodes (LED)**
For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i **Halogen bulbs**
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Front lamps

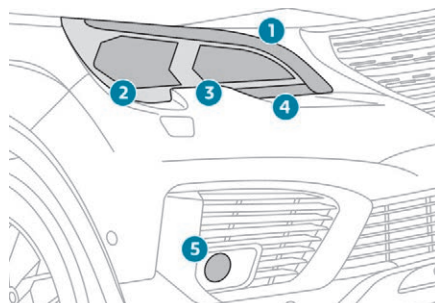
Model with "Full LED" headlamps



1. **Direction indicators (LED).**
2. **Main beam/dipped beam headlamps (LED).**
3. **Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED).**
4. **Light-emitting diodes (LED).**

! Do not touch the "Full LED" headlamps.
Risk of electrocution!
Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Model with halogen headlamps



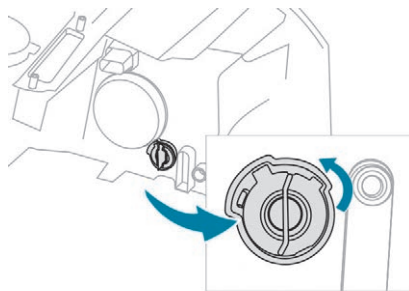
1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
3. Main beam headlamps (HB3).
4. Direction indicators (PWY24W).
5. Foglamps (H11).

! **Opening the bonnet/Access to bulbs**
Engine warm, proceed with caution – Risk of burns!

Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine fan – Risk of strangulation!

Changing direction indicator bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)

i Quicker flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates the failure of one of the bulbs on the corresponding side.

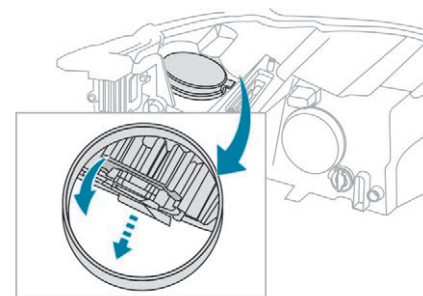


- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
 - ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn, pull it out and fit a new bulb.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i Amber colour bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs with identical colour and specifications.

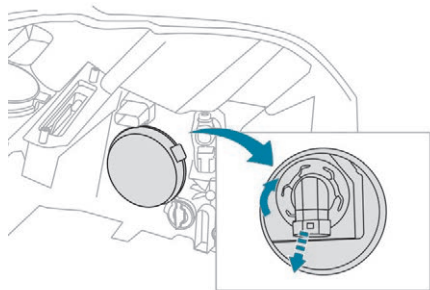
! To refit, close the protective cover very carefully to guarantee the leak-tightness of the lamp.

Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)



- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tongue.
 - ☞ Pull the connector back to disconnect it.
 - ☞ Pull the bulb back to extract it.
 - ☞ Replace the bulb.
- To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

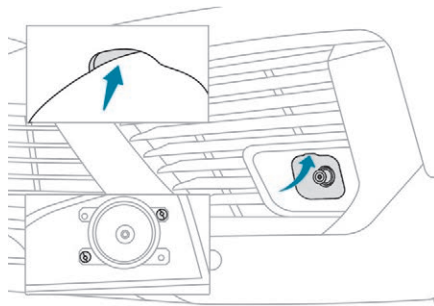
Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)



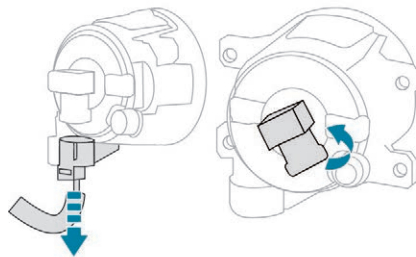
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tongue.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Changing foglamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)



- ☞ Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the trim.
- ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the foglamp trim.
- ☞ With a Torx screwdriver, remove the two module fixing screws.
- ☞ Remove the module from its housing.

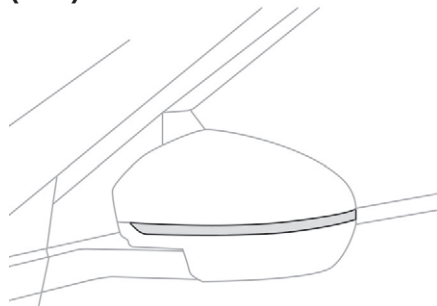


- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Change the assembly.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

i To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Direction indicator side repeaters (LED)



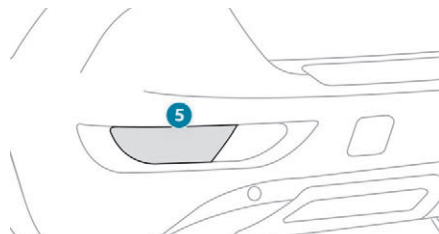
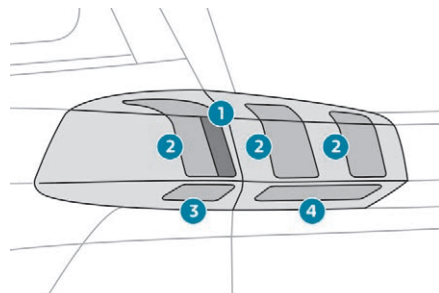
Side spotlamps (LED)



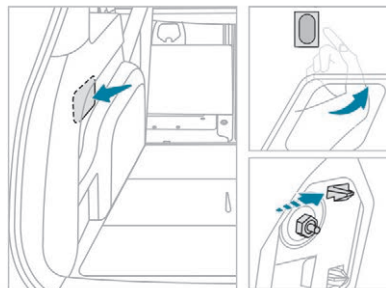
1. Brake lamps (LED).
2. Sidelamps/daytime running lamps (LED).
3. Direction indicators (WY16W amber).
4. Reversing lamps (W16W).
5. Foglamp (P21W).

LEDs: light-emitting diodes.

Rear lamps

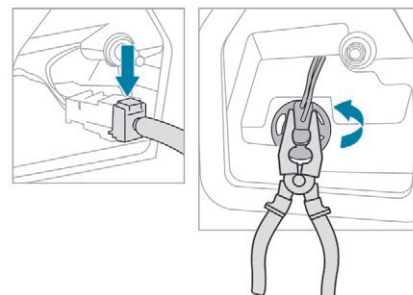


Direction indicators (on the wings)



- ☞ Open the tailgate then unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ☞ Unblock the lamp fixing nut with a 10 mm box spanner.
- ☞ To avoid losing the nut if it drops into the wing trim, first place a cloth below it.

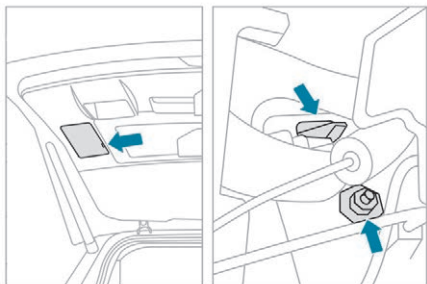
- ☞ Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining clip, while pushing the lamp out slightly.



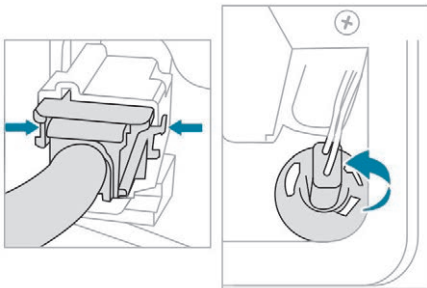
- ☞ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear, then up.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn using a standard pair of pliers and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and replace it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Reversing lamps (on the tailgate)



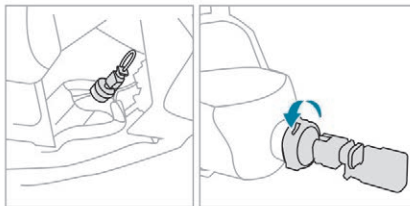
- ☞ Open the tailgate, then insert a flat screwdriver into the cut-out to unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ☞ Unblock the lamp fixing nut with a 10 mm box spanner.
- ☞ Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Disengage the retaining clip, while pushing the lamp out slightly.



- ☞ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector by pressing on each side.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and pull it out.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Foglamps



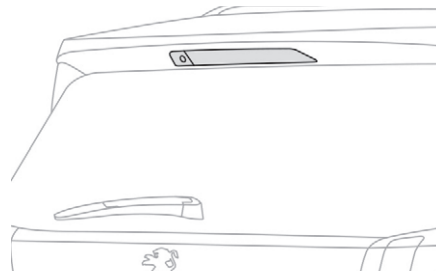
These bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper:

- ☞ Pass your hand under the bumper,
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it,
- ☞ Turn the bulb a quarter turn, pull it out and change it.

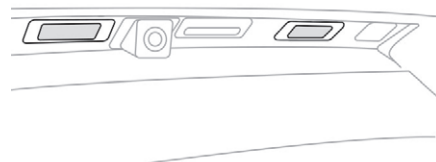
To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! If changing a bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust – there is a risk of burns!

Third brake lamp (LED)



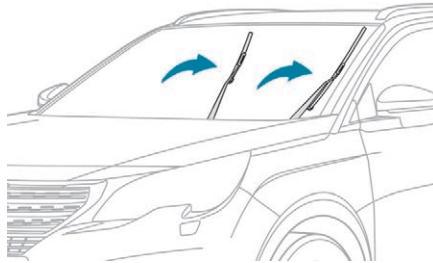
Licence plate lamps



- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the slot in the lens.
- ☞ Push it out to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a front wiper



- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper control stalk to position the wiper blades in the middle of the windscreen (maintenance position).

Removing

- ☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm away from the windscreen.
- ☞ Unclip and remove the wiper blade.

Refitting

- ☞ Position and clip the new wiper blade to the arm.
- ☞ Carefully lower the wiper arm.

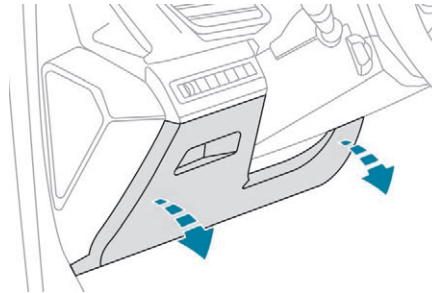
After refitting a front wiper

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper control stalk again to park the wiper blades.

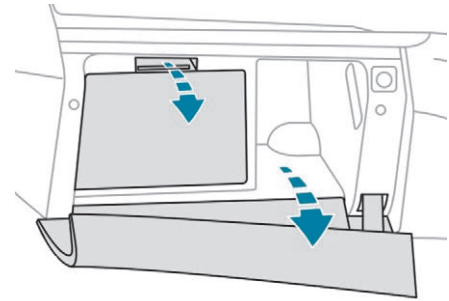
Changing a fuse

Access to tools

The extraction tweezers are located behind the fusebox cover.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.



- ☞ Open the glove box.
- ☞ Press on the centre handle of the fusebox cover.
- ☞ Lower the cover completely.
- ☞ Take the tweezers from their housing.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ identify the cause of the failure and correct it,
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers,
- ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the current allocation tables and diagrams.

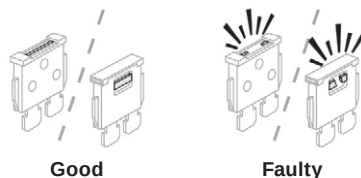
To work on a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the defective fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause a malfunction (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The fuse allocation tables and the corresponding diagrams are available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not shown in the allocation tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Tweezers

i **Installing electrical accessories**
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! PEUGEOT will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Fuses in the dashboard

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

To access the fuses, follow the same procedure as that described for accessing the tool kit for changing fuses.

For more information on **Access to tools**, refer to the corresponding section.

Version 1 (Full)

Box 1

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F1	3 A	Keyless Entry and Starting.
F2	5 A	Multifunction screen.
F5	5 A	Reversing camera, parking sensors.
F7	10 A	Hi-Fi amplifier.
F8	20 A	Rear wiper.
F10	30 A	Locks.
F11	30 A	Locks.
F17	10 A	Boot 12 V accessory socket.
F18	5 A	Emergency and assistance calls.
F22	3 A	Glove box lighting.
F26	3 A	Seat belts not fastened warning lamps display.
F27	3 A	Rain/sunshine sensor.
F31	5 A	Airbags.
F33	15 A	Front 12 V accessory socket
F35	5 A	Instrument panel.
F36	20 A	Audio system, touch screen, CD player, audio/navigation system.

Box 2

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F17	10 A	Storing driving positions.

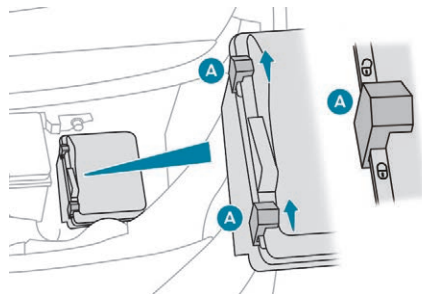
Version 2 (Eco)

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F4	15 A	Horn.
F5	20 A	Front screenwash pump.
F6	20 A	Rear screenwash pump.
F7	10 A	12 V accessory socket.
F8	20 A	Rear wiper.
F10	30 A	Locks.
F11	30 A	Locks.
F14	5 A	Alarm siren.
F17	5 A	Instrument panel.
F22	3 A	Rain/sunshine sensor.
F24	5 A	Reversing camera, parking sensors.
F25	5 A	Airbags.
F27	5 A	Alarm.
F28	5 A	Emergency and assistance calls.
F29	20 A	Audio system, touch screen, CD player, audio/ navigation system.
F32	15 A	Cigarette lighter.
F36	5 A	Glove box lighting.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

Access to the fuses



- ☞ Release the two latches **A**.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully then engage the two latches **A**, to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Version 1 (Full)

Box 1

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F14	15 A	Screenwash pump.
F15	5 A	Power steering.
F20	25 A	Screenwash pump.
F22	15 A	Horn.
F23	15 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	15 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.

Box 2

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F8	30 A	Diesel emissions control system (AdBlue)
F12	15 A	Automatic gearbox.
F14	5 A	Automatic gearbox.

Version 2 (Eco)

Fuse N°	Rating (A)	Functions
F16	25 A	Front foglamps.
F18	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.

12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries



Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.

Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



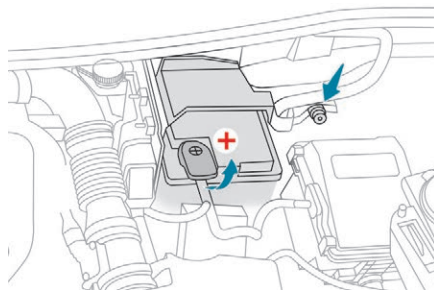
Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.

All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.

Wash your hands afterwards.

Access to the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
- ☞ lift the bonnet, then hold it in place with its prop.

(+) Positive terminal.

It has a quick-release clamp.

(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is placed near the battery.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.



Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.

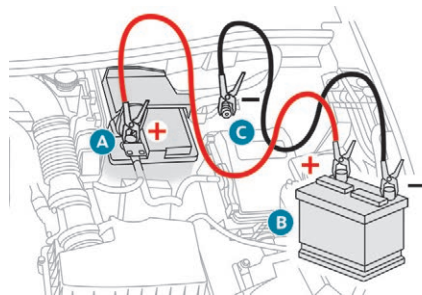
Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
 - ☞ Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the positive terminal (+) of backup battery **B** or the booster.
 - ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
 - ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
 - ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
 - ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
- If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ☞ Disconnect the jump lead cables in reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

! If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, do not try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

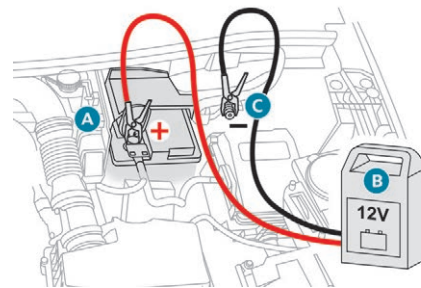
- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

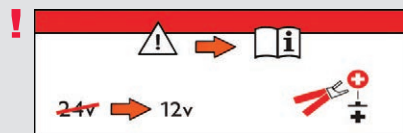
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
- ☞ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.

- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect charger **B** cables as follows:
 - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
 - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

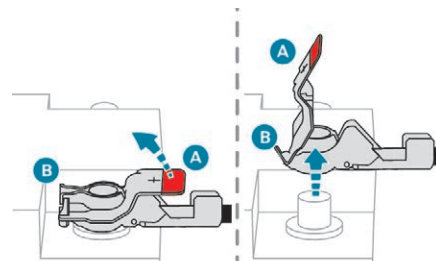
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, tailgate, windows, sunroof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.),
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

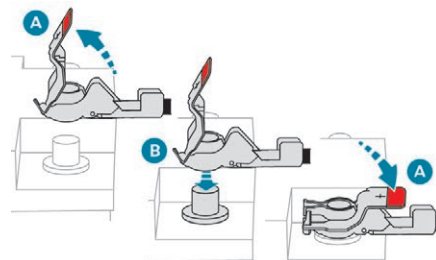
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, in order to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

i For right-hand drive vehicles, when the total distance recorder has reached 62 miles (100 km), it is necessary to wait approx. 15 minutes before starting the engine.

However, if minor problems persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise or reset certain systems, such as:

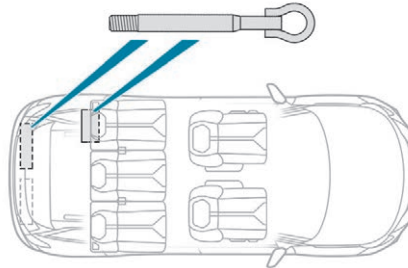
- the key with remote control or electronic key (depending on version),
- the sunroof and its electric blind,
- the electric windows,
- the date and time,
- the preset radio stations.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

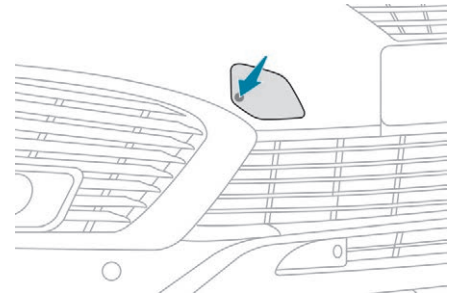
Access to the tools



Depending on version, the towing eye is stored either in the interior trim of the boot sill, left hand side, or in a bag behind the left rear seat. For more information on **Access to the tools**, refer to the corresponding section.

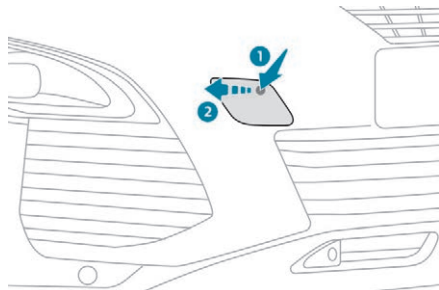
Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



Model with halogen headlamps

- ☞ Press on the indicated zone until the cover plate is unclipped.



Model with "Full LED" headlamps

- ☞ Press on the top right corner, then, while still pressing, slide your finger to the left until the cover plate is unclipped.
- ☞ Screw in the towing eye until it tightens fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.

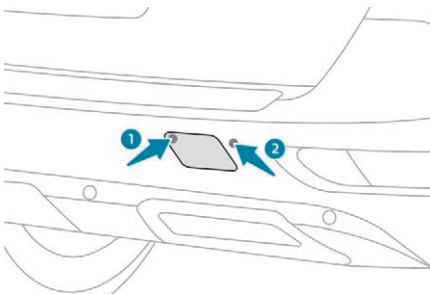
! ☞ Place the gearbox in neutral.
Failure to follow this instruction could result in damage to some components (brakes, transmission, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance when the engine is restarted.

! Automatic gearbox: never tow the vehicle with front wheels on the ground with the engine off.

- ☞ Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently and drive slowly for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



- ☞ Press the top left corner of the cover plate then press the bumper to the right of the cover plate, until it unclips.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Set off gently and drive slowly for a short distance.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

i The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW values and the towable loads listed are valid for a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towable load must be reduced by steps of 10% for each additional 1,000 metres.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towbar.

GTW: Gross train weight.

! When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

! Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of approximately 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

i If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine be allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Petrol engines and towed loads

Engines	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.2 litre PureTech 130 S&S	1.6 litre THP 150	1.6 litre THP 165	1.6 litre THP 165 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)
Codes	LHK (EB2ADTS MB6 STT)	CRK (EB2DTS MCM STT)	CRQ – CXQ (EB2DTS AT6III STT) (EB2DTS AT6III STT)	KUM (EP6FDTMD AT6III)	KNM (EP6FDTM AT6III)	KHQ (EP6FDT AT6III STT)
Model codes M...	RHNSJ/S1B RHNSJ/S1F	RHNYH/S1B RHNYH/S1F - RHNYH/S1K	RHNYW/S1B RHNYW/S1F RHNWW/S1B RHNWW/S1F	45GXV/S1A 45GXW/S1A	45GYV/S1A 45GYW/S1A	45GZW/S1B 45GZW/S1F
Cylinder capacity (cm³)	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	96	96	96	110	121.4	121.4
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	1,150	1,200/1,100	1,000	600	600	1,340
Unbraked trailer (kg)	690	690	690	600	600	720
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	46	72	72	72	72	72

Diesel engines and towed loads

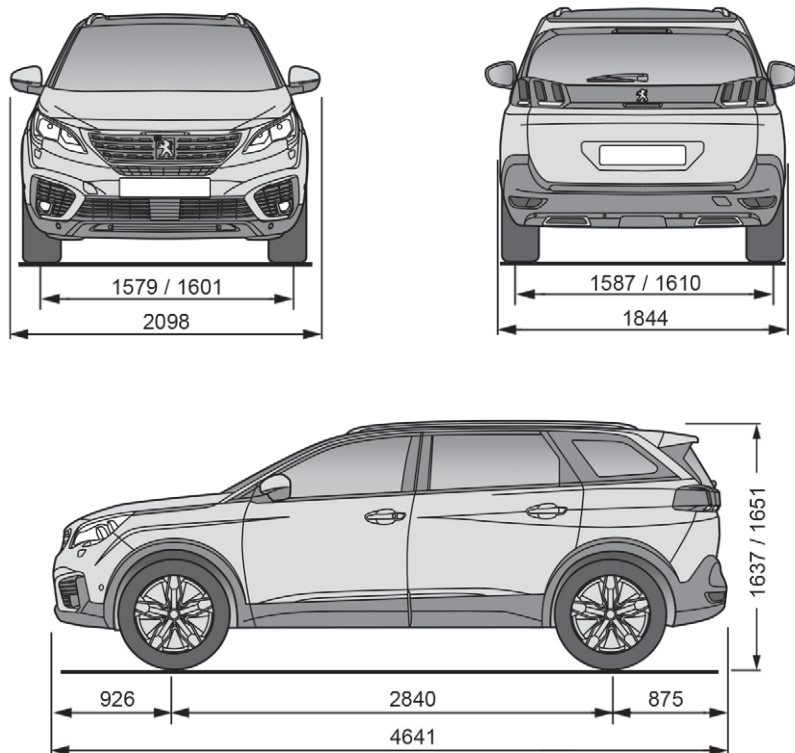
Engines	1.5 litre BlueHDi 130 S&S	1.5 litre BlueHDi 130 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Auto 8-speed)
Codes	MAK (DV5RC ML6O STT)	MA1 (DV5RC ATN8 STT)
Model codes M...	CYHZJ/S2B CYHZJ/S2F CYHZJ/S2K	CYHZR/S2B CYHZR/S2F CYHZR/S2K
Cylinder capacity (cm ³)	1,499	1,499
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	96	96
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	1,300	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	72	48

Engines	1.6 litre BlueHDi 100 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 115 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S	1.6 litre BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM (Manual 5-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)
Codes	KEJ (DV6FD BE4 STT)	LAK (DV6FC ML6C STT)	LAQ (DV6FC AT6III STT)	KDK (DV6FC ML6C STT)	KDQ (DV6FC AT6III STT)
Model codes M...	CBHYB/S2B CBHYB/S2F	CBHYB/S2B CBHXH/S2F	CBHXW/S2B CBHXW/S2F	CBHZH/S2B CBHZH/S2F - CBHZH/S2K	CBHZW/S2B CBHZW/S2F
Cylinder capacity (cm ³)	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max power: EEC standard (kW)	73	85	85	88	88
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	1,100	1,300	1,100	1,300/1,200	1,100
Unbraked trailer (kg)	710	720	720	720	720
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	72	72	72	72	72

Engines	2.0 litre HDi 150	2.0 litre HDi 150	2.0 litre BlueHDi 150 S&S	2.0 litre BlueHDi 180 S&S
Gearboxes	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (Auto 6-speed)	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Auto 8-speed)
Codes	LR6 (DW10FD ML6C)	LRM (DW10FD AM6III)	KBK (DW10FD ML6C STT)	KA1 (DW10FC AMN8 STT)
Model codes M...	JAHXG/S2A	JAHXV/S2A	JAHXH/S2B JAHXH/S2F	JEHZP/S2B JEHZP/S2F JEHZP/S2K
Cylinder capacity (cm ³)	1,997	1,997	1,997	1,997
Max power: EU standard (kW)	110	110	110	130
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10 or 12% gradient	600	600	1,800	1,800
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	72	72	72	72

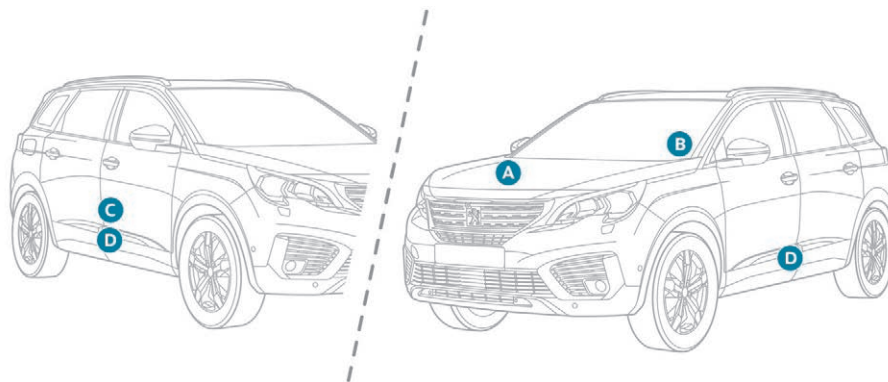
Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and localisation of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (V.I.N.), under the bonnet.

The number is engraved on the bodywork structure.

B. Vehicle identification number (V.I.N.), on the dashboard.

The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.

This tamperproof label is affixed to the right-hand door.

It bears the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (V.I.N.),

- the maximum authorised vehicle weight (the Gross Vehicle Weight or GVW),
- the maximum authorised vehicle + trailer weight (the Gross Train Weight or GTW),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

D. Tyres/paint code label.

This label is affixed to the driver's door aperture.

It bears the following information about the tyres:

- the tyre pressures, unladen and laden,
- the tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices,

- the spare tyre pressure.
- It also indicates the paint colour code.

i The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	3
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	13
Applications	16
Radio	21
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	22
Media	23
Telephone	25
Settings	29
Frequently asked questions	32

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left-hand side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

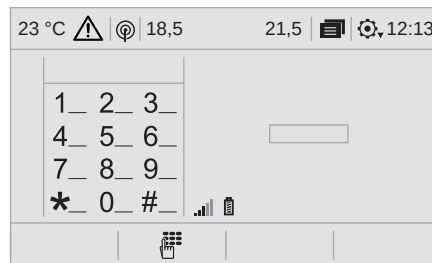
You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

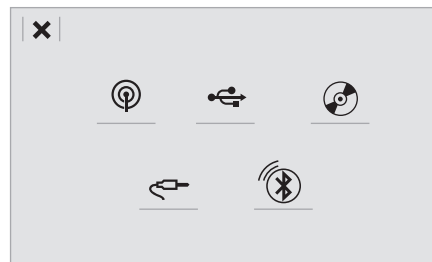
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth* and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).



* Depending on equipment.

i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering multiple settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place after the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

Steering mounted controls

Depending on model.



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

+ Increase volume.

or



Mute/Restore the sound.
Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

- Decrease volume.

or



SRC **Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



or



Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Air conditioning



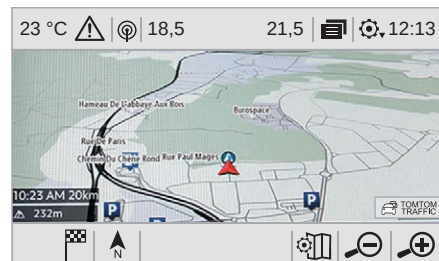
Manage the different temperature and air flow settings.



Connected navigation



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



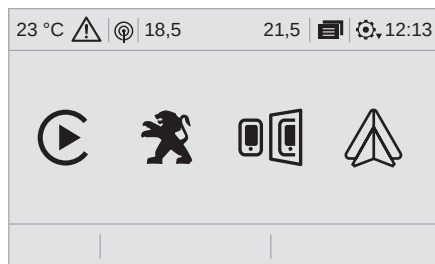
Applications



or

APPS

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



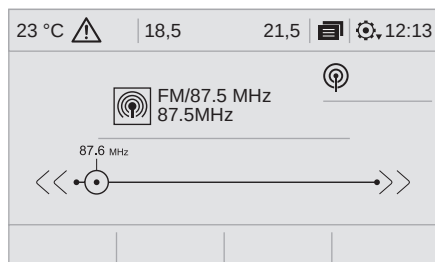
Radio Media



or

MEDIA

Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



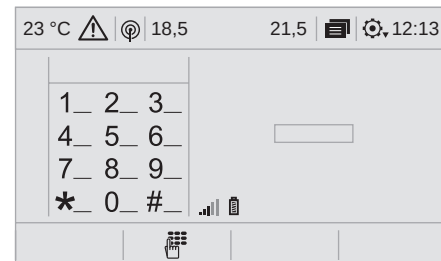
Telephone



or

TEL

Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



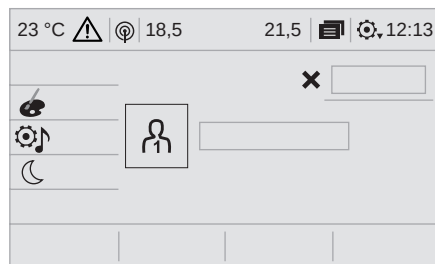
Settings



or

SETUP

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



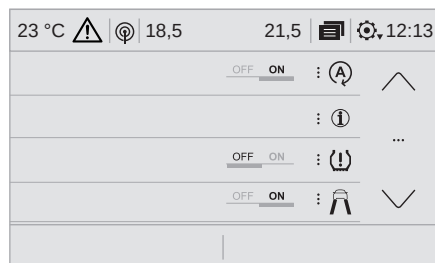
Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

DRIVE



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid exterior interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

"Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London".

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

"Play artist, Madonna".

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.

Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk voice command button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask me to do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

i Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

i These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" or "listen to" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say , for example, "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

i Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

i If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

- i** If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say, for example, "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages. Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".
Listen to most recent message*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

- i** The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Contact"** tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Points of interest"**.



Select the **"Travel"**, or **"Leisure"** or **"Commercial"** or **"Public"** or **"Geographic"** tab.

Or



Select **"Search"** to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

i A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

i TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.

The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

i The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).



Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.



The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
 - Filling stations,
 - Car park,
 - Traffic,
 - POI local search.
- A Danger zone pack (option).



The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation



In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



or

NAV

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorise sending information"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate **"Warn of danger zones"**.



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**

! For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: **"Authorise sending information"**.



The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"



To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.



or



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"Declare a new danger zone"** button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option **"Type"** to choose the type of "danger zone".



Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.



Press **"OK"** to save and distribute the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"System settings"**.



Select the **"System info"** tab.



Select **"View"** to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select **"Update(s) due"**.



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

i The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

i Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay**[®], **MirrorLink**[™] or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay[®] smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

TEL

Press on **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

APPS

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **MirrorLink™** function.

OK

In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK

In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

i There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth® connection

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

i The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/OR

Select the **"Settings"** tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Manage connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Manage connection"**.

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.

First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio



Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different "multiplexes" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking



"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station tracking**".

OK

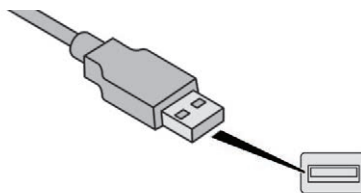
Press "**OK**".

i If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("DAB-FM" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

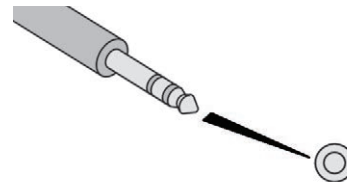
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model/depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied. Device management is done by the audio system controls. Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

i Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

i The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to hear the message.

! Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.



Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.



The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.



Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.



Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP



Select "**Colour schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.



Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
---	--	---

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new key, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass, Treble, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

PEUGEOT Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	8
Media	9
Telephone	11
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the message **Energy Economy Mode** signals that a change to standby is imminent.

i The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left-hand side of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth* and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with shared interests, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Depending on model.



Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.

or



Mute/Restore the sound.

Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

or



Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

 Decrease volume.

or



SRC



or

SRC



Media (short press): change the multimedia source.

Telephone (short press): start telephone call.

Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.

Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): previous/next preset.

Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

or

OK



Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.

Media: display the list of tracks.

Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

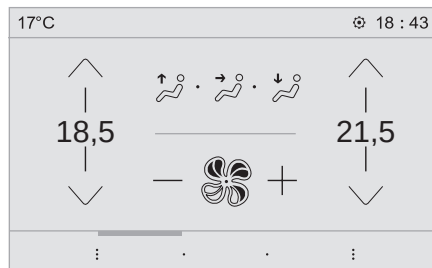
Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Air conditioning



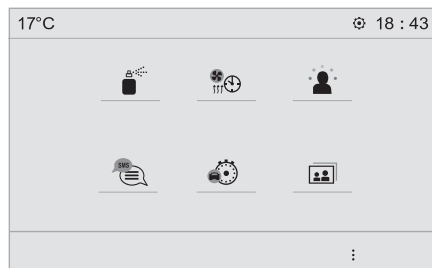
Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Applications



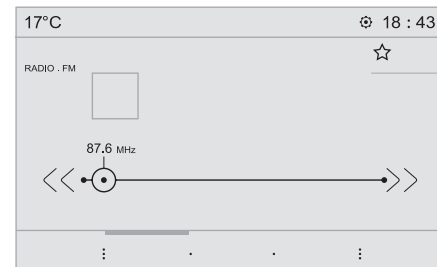
Access configurable equipment.



Radio Media



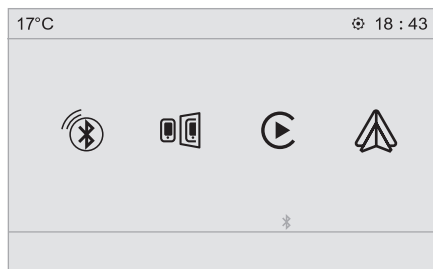
Select an audio source or radio station.



Telephone



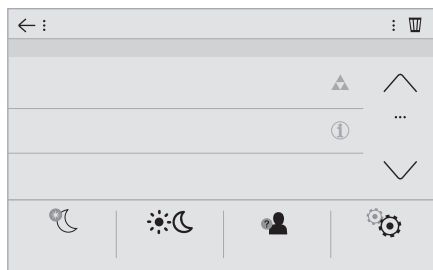
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



Driving



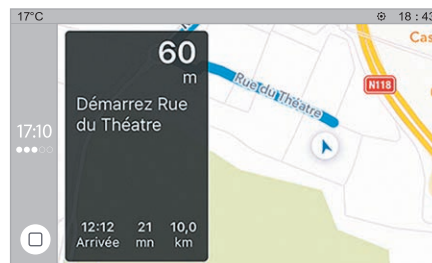
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: ".tiff"; ".gif"; ".jpg/jpeg"; ".bmp"; ".png".



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for a contact.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey area to confirm.

i The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

i The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**News**"/"**Info**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Sound**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

I In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

I Onboard audio: the Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplexes" offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Tracking

I "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".



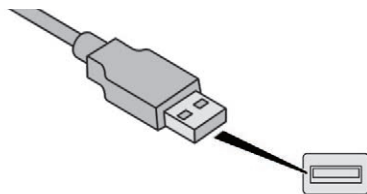
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

I If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

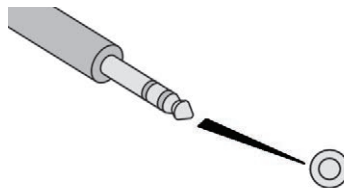
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First, adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen. The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.

OK

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

Automatic reconnection

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Internet data"**.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

Profile settings



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save the time.



Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

 Press the back arrow to save the settings.

 The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

 Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

 Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

 Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

 Press on this button to define the date.

 Press the back arrow to save the date.

 Select the display format of the date.

 Press the back arrow again to confirm.

 Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

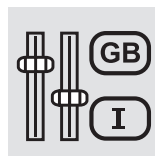
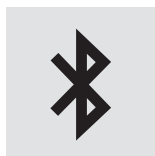
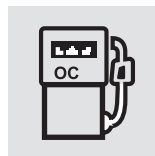
Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.

Bluetooth® audio system



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	6
Media	7
Telephone	10
Frequently asked questions	14

i The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

! Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or a qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

i To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps



Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.



Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).



Adjust audio settings:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation/Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.



Confirm or display contextual menu.



Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.



Radio:
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.

Media:
Select previous/next CD, USB, streaming track.
Scroll in a list.



Radio:
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Scroll in a list.



Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).



Access to the main menu.



Activate/Deactivate TA (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.



Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

LIST**Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

SRC /**Other than telephone call:**

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2

**MENU**

Access to the main menu.



Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound.



Decrease volume.

SRC /**Other than telephone call:**

Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); CD; streaming), confirmation if the "Telephone" menu is open.

Long press: open the "Telephone" menu.

In the event of a telephone call:

Short press: accept the call.

Long press: reject the call.

During a telephone call:

Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.

Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST**Radio:**

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.



"Multimedia": Media settings, Radio settings.



"Telephone": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.



"Trip computer".



"Maintenance": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.



"Connections": Manage connections, search for devices.



"Personalisation-configuration":

Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU

Press the **"MENU"** button.



Move from one menu to another.



Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station



Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND

Press this button to select a waveband (FM/AM/DAB).



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.



Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up/down for radio frequencies.

LIST

Press this button to display the list of stations received locally. To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

i The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

i If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

! The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In **"Radio"** mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀▶ Select **"Audio functions"**.

OK Press **OK**.

◀▶ Select the **"FM waveband preferences"** function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀▶ Select **"Frequency tracking (RDS)"**.

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Play TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

! Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display TEXT INFOS

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

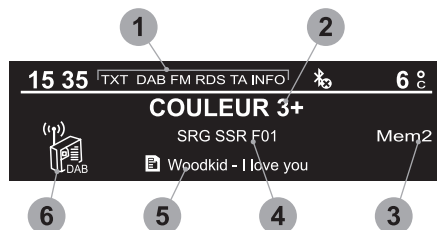
OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

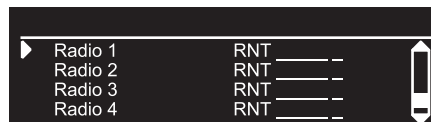
i If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



- Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.
- Display of the name of the current station.

- Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.
- Display the name of the "multiplex" service being used, also called "ensemble".
- Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.
- Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

i When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

i Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO). The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex/ensemble".

▲▼ Starting of a search for the previous/next "multiplex/ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

i When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB/FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB/FM station tracking

i "DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.

When the digital signal is weak, "DAB/FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).

When the "DAB/FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

i If "DAB/FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

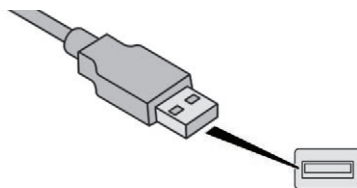
◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

▲ ▼ Select "**DAB/FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

! If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB/FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.

- **Repeat:** the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

▲ Press this button to select the chosen play mode.
▼

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

◀▶ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track.

▲ Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next folder.
▼

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.



Select by "**Folder**"/"**Artist**"/"**Genre**"/"**Playlist**".
Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.



Navigate in the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.



Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

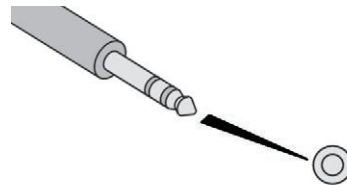


Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next "**Folder**"/"**Artist**"/"**Genre**"/"**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the auxiliary Jack socket and the USB port at the same time.

CD player

Insert circular compact discs only.

Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are not related to the quality of the original player.

Insert a CD in the player, playback begins automatically.

! External CD players connected via the USB port are not recognised by the system.

SRC // To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

◀◀▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of tracks on the CD.

◀◀▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Playing an MP3 compilation

Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player.

The audio equipment searches for all of the music tracks, which may take anything between a few seconds and several tens of seconds, before playback begins.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is advisable to keep to a limit of two levels to reduce the access time before the CD is played. The folder structure is not observed during playback. All of the files are displayed on a single level.

SRC // To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".

▲▼ Press one of the buttons to select a folder on the CD.

◀◀▶▶ Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST Press the **LIST** button to display the list of directories of the MP3 compilation.

◀◀▶▶ Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

SRC // Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE**.
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen. If the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The CD player can play files with ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav" and ".aac" file extensions, with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

It also supports TAG mode (ID3 tag, WMA TAG).

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.

No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. " ?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2, or Joliet, if possible, when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Search for a device**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.

A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.



Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Manage connections



The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.



Select "**Connections**".

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Indicates that a device is connected.



A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:

- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.



Indicates connection of the audio streaming profile.



Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.



Select a telephone.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.



Then select and confirm:

- **"Connect telephone"/**
"Disconnect telephone":
to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- **"Connect media player"/**
"Disconnect media player":
to connect/disconnect streaming only.
- **"Connect telephone + media player"/"Disconnect telephone + media player":**
to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- **"Delete connection":** to delete the pairing.



When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Select the **"YES"** tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

SRC //

Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"Call"**.

Select **"Dial"**.

Or

Select **"Directory"**.

Or

Select **"Calls list"**.

OK

Confirm with **OK**.

SRC //

Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the **"Telephone"** menu.

Select **"End call"**.

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC //

During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

i With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected. The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ In the contextual menu, select
▼ "Hang up" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ In the contextual menu:
▼ - select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Telephone mode

▲ In the contextual menu:
▼ - select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ From the contextual menu, select
▼ "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Consultation call

▲ From the contextual menu, select
▼ "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

Directory

▲ To access the directory, press and
▼ hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of
▼ contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK**.

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select **"Telephone"** and confirm.

Select **"Directory management"** and confirm.

You can:

- **"Consult an entry"**,
- **"Delete an entry"**,
- **"Delete all entries"**.



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.

The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

i Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction in volume or the CD play stopping.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, CD, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience and Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Balance and Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.

The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system and of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

180° rear vision 209-210

A

Accessories 122, 160
 Active Safety Brake 16-17, 192-195
 AdBlue® 20, 32, 237
 Additive, Diesel 235
 Adjusting headlamps 114
 Adjusting head restraints 71
 Adjusting seats 69-71, 77-78
 Adjusting the air distribution 89-92
 Adjusting the air flow 89-92
 Adjusting the date 38-40, 31, 18
 Adjusting the height and reach
 of the steering wheel 74
 Adjusting the lumbar support 69-71
 Adjusting the seat belt height 130-131
 Adjusting the temperature 89-92
 Adjusting the time 38-40, 31, 17
 Advanced Grip Control 128-129
 Advice on driving 155-156
 Airbags 18, 134, 139
 Airbags, curtain 135-137
 Airbags, front 134-135, 137
 Airbags, lateral 135, 137
 Air conditioning 86-88
 Air conditioning, automatic 85
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic 89, 93
 Air conditioning, manual 85-86, 92-93
 Air conditioning, mono-zone 87-88, 93
 Air intake 89-92
 Air vents 84
 Alarm 56
 Amplifier, audio 101
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 15, 125
 Apple CarPlay connection 16, 12
 Armrest, front 102-103
 Assistance call 123-124

Assistance, emergency braking 125, 194
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 24, 9, 9

B

Backrest, folding 70-71
 Battery 13, 227, 235, 262, 264-265
 Battery charge (warning lamp) 13
 Battery, charging 263-264
 Battery, remote control 52, 54
 Blind 64
 Blind spot monitoring system 24, 203-205
 Blind spot monitoring system, active 24, 205
 Blind spot sensors 24, 203-204
 Blinds, side 107
 BlueHDi 32, 35, 237, 240
 Bluetooth (hands-free) 25-26, 13-14, 10-11
 Bluetooth (telephone) 25-27, 13-15
 Bonnet 230-231
 Boot 59-60, 62, 110
 Boot (fittings) 108
 Brake discs 236-237
 Brake lamps 255
 Brakes 14-15, 236-237
 Braking assistance system 125
 Braking, automatic emergency 16-17, 192-195
 Braking, emergency 164
 Brightness 16
 Bulbs 252
 Bulbs (changing) 252, 255-256

C

Cable, audio 23, 9
 Cable, Jack 23, 9
 Capacity, fuel tank 220
 Cartridge, fragrance 103-104

CD 23-24, 9, 9
 CD, MP3 23-24, 9, 9
 Central locking 49, 55
 Changing a bulb 252, 255-256
 Changing a fuse 257-258, 261
 Changing a wheel 241-243, 246-248
 Changing a wiper blade 120, 257
 Changing the remote control battery 54
 Charger, induction 101-102
 Charger, wireless 101-102
 Checking the engine oil level 31
 Checking the levels 232, 234
 Checking tyre pressures
 (using the kit) 243, 245
 Checks 231-232, 235-237
 Child lock 153-154
 Children 144, 146-148, 150
 Children (safety) 153-154
 Child seats 133, 138-139, 142, 144, 152
 Child seats, conventional 142, 144
 Child seats, i-Size 150
 Child seats, ISOFIX 146-148, 150
 Cigarette lighter 100
 Closing the boot 47, 50, 59
 Closing the doors 47, 49-50, 59
 Configurations, seats 82
 Configuration, vehicle 38-42, 44
 Connection, Bluetooth 19, 25-27, 13-15, 11
 Connection, MirrorLink 17, 11-12
 Connection, Wi-Fi network 20
 Connectivity 101
 Container, AdBlue® 238
 Control, emergency door 52
 Control, heated seats 73
 Controls, steering mounted 165-169
 Control stalk, lighting 25-26, 111, 113
 Control stalk, wipers 119-121
 Courtesy lamps 104-105
 Cruise control 175-176, 178, 181-187, 191-192
 Cruise control by speed limit recognition 178

Cruise control, adaptive with
 Stop function..... 178, 184-187, 191-192
 Cup holder.....99
 Customisation 9

D

DAB (Digital Audio
 Broadcasting) – Digital radio..... 22, 8, 6-7
 Date (setting)..... 38-40, 31, 18
 Daytime running lamps..... 112, 252-253
 Deactivating the passenger airbag...134-135, 139
 Deadlocking 47, 50
 Defrosting.....93
 Defrosting, front.....93
 Demisting.....93
 Demisting, front.....93
 Demisting, rear.....94
 Dials and gauges 8
 Dimensions 272
 Dipstick..... 31, 233-234
 Direction indicators 25, 113,
 252-253, 255-256
 Display screen, instrument panel 170-171
 Distance Alert – Collision Risk Alert 192-193
 Door pockets.....99
 Doors.....58
 Doors, rear 153-154
 Driver's attention warning.....197
 Driving.....68-69
 Driving abroad..... 112
 Driving positions (storing).....72-73
 Driving time warning 196
 Dynamic pack 170
 Dynamic stability control (DSC).....125-129

E

Economy mode 227
 Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).....125
 Electronic stability control (ESC).....125
 Emergency braking assistance (EBA).....125
 Emergency call 123-124
 Emergency switching off.....160-161
 Emissions control system, SCR 237
 Energy economy mode.....227
 Engine compartment.....231-232
 Engine, Diesel..... 222, 231-232, 240, 269, 271
 Engine oil pressure 12
 Engine, petrol..... 222, 232, 268
 Engines 267-269, 271
 Environment.....52

F

Fatigue detection 196-197
 Filling the AdBlue® tank 238
 Filling the fuel tank..... 220-222
 Filter, air 235
 Filter, oil 235
 Filter, particle 234-235
 Filter, passenger compartment.....235
 Fitting a wheel..... 249-251
 Fitting roof bars..... 229-230
 Fittings, boot 108
 Fittings, interior 99-100
 Fittings, rear 106
 Flap, fuel filler..... 220-221
 Floor, concertina 80
 Foglamps 111
 Foglamps, front..... 25, 112, 118, 252-254
 Foglamps, rear..... 112, 256
 Folding the rear seats 76-78
 Frequency (radio).....21-22
 Fuel.....222
 Fuel tank..... 220-221

Fusebox, engine compartment.....261
 Fuses..... 257-258, 261

G

Gauge, fuel.....220
 Gearbox, automatic 165-173, 236, 263
 Gearbox, manual 164-165, 169-173, 236
 Gear lever, automatic gearbox 165-169
 Gear lever, manual gearbox 164-165
 Gear shift indicator ~ Gear
 efficiency indicator 170-171
 Glove box 100
 GPS.....12
 Grab handles 99

H

Hands-free access.....61
 Hands-free tailgate 60-62
 Hazard warning lamps..... 123, 240
 Headlamp adjustment..... 114
 Headlamps, automatic dipping 26, 116-118
 Headlamps,
 automatic illumination..... 111, 114-115
 Headlamps, dipped beam..... 25-26, 252-254
 Headlamps, halogen..... 114, 252-253
 Headlamps, main beam..... 26, 252-254
 Head restraints, front 71
 Head restraints, rear 76, 81
 Heating.....84, 86-88, 92
 Heating, additional.....94
 Heating, programmable 94
 Hi-Fi system 101
 Hill Assist Descent Control
 (HADC) 24, 129-130
 Hill start assist.....169-170
 Horn.....123

i-Cockpit amplify function ... 74, 83-84, 103, 170
 Ignition.....158, 160, 28
 Ignition on.....160
 Immobiliser, electronic.....52, 156
 Indicator, AdBlue® range.....32
 Indicator, coolant temperature.....32
 Indicator, engine oil level.....31, 35
 Indicator lamps, operation.....11, 15
 Indicators, direction.....113, 253
 Inflating tyres.....236
 Inflating tyres (using the kit).....243, 245
 Instrument panel.....8-9, 35-37
 Intelligent Traction Control.....126
 Internet browser.....16
 ISOFIX.....147
 ISOFIX mountings.....146

Jack.....242, 246-248, 23, 9
 Jump starting.....262

Key.....46, 52
 Key, electronic.....49-50
 Keyless Entry and
 Starting.....49-50, 52, 158-159
 Key not recognised.....160-161
 Key with remote control.....156
 Kit, hands-free.....25-26, 13-14, 10-11
 Kit, temporary puncture repair.....241-243, 245

Labels, identification.....273
 Lamp, boot.....110
 Lamps, parking.....113

Lamps, rear.....255
 Lane Departure Warning
 System (LDWS), Active.....17, 198-199, 205
 Lane Departure Warning
 System (LDWS).....17, 198
 LEDs – Light-emitting
 diodes.....112, 252-253, 255
 Level, brake fluid.....234
 Level, Diesel additive.....234-235
 Level, engine coolant.....32, 234
 Level, engine oil.....31, 233-234
 Levels and checks.....231-232, 234
 Level, screenwash fluid.....120, 234
 Light-emitting diodes –
 LEDs.....112, 252-253, 255
 Lighting.....26
 Lighting, cornering.....118
 Lighting dimmer.....36
 Lighting, exterior.....111
 Lighting, guide-me home.....48, 115-116
 Lighting, interior.....104-105
 Lighting, mood.....36, 105
 Lighting, welcome.....115
 Loading.....109-110, 229-230
 Load reduction mode.....227
 Locating your vehicle.....48
 Locking.....47, 50, 52
 Locking from the inside.....55
 Locking the doors.....60
 Low fuel level.....220

Map reading lamps.....104-105
 Markings, identification.....273
 Massage function.....74
 Massage, multi-point.....74
 Mat.....104
 Memorising a speed.....175-176
 Menu.....12

Menu, main.....4
 Menus (audio).....3-5, 4-5
 Messages.....28
 Messages, quick.....28
 Mirror, rear view.....75-76
 Mirrors, door.....74-75, 94, 203-204
 Mirror, vanity.....99
 Misfuel prevention.....221
 Modularity, seats.....82
 Motorised tailgate.....60-62
 Mountings, ISOFIX.....146
 MP3 CD.....9

Net.....108-109
 Net, high load retaining.....109-110
 Number plate lamps.....256

Obstacle detection.....205
 Oil change.....233-234
 Oil consumption.....233-234
 Oil, engine.....12, 233-234
 On-board tools.....241-243
 Opening the bonnet.....230-231
 Opening the boot.....49, 59
 Opening the doors.....49, 58
 Opening the fuel filler flap.....220
 Opening the windows.....46

Pads, brake.....236-237
 Paint.....273
 Paint colour code.....273
 Parcel shelf, rear.....107
 Park Assist.....212-213

Parking brake 236-237
 Parking brake, electric 14, 27, 161-164
 Parking sensors, audible and visual 205
 Parking sensors, front 206
 Parking sensors, rear 205
 PEUGEOT Connect Nav 1
 PEUGEOT Connect Radio 1
 Plates, identification 273
 Player, Apple® 24, 10, 10
 Player, MP3 CD 23, 9
 Player, USB 100, 23, 9, 7
 Port, USB 100-101, 23, 9, 7
 Pre-heater, Diesel 23
 Pressures, tyres 236, 246
 Pre-tensioning seat belts 133
 Priming the fuel system 240-241
 Profiles 30, 16
 Protecting children 134-135, 138-139,
 142, 144, 146-148, 150
 Puncture 243, 245

R

Radio 21, 24, 6, 9, 4-5
 Radio, digital (Digital Audio
 Broadcasting – DAB) 22, 8, 6
 Range, AdBlue 32-34
 RDS 21-22, 7
 Rear air blower 92
 Rear screen, demisting 94
 Recharging the battery 263-264
 Reduction of electrical load 227
 Regeneration of the particle filter 235
 Reinitialisation of the under-
 inflation detection system 175
 Reinitialising the remote control 54
 Reminder, key in ignition 158
 Remote control 46-47, 49-50, 52
 Removing a wheel 249-251

Removing the mat 104
 Replacing bulbs 252, 255-256
 Replacing fuses 257-258
 Replacing the air filter 235
 Replacing the oil filter 235
 Replacing the passenger
 compartment filter 235
 Reservoir, screenwash 234
 Resetting the service indicator 31
 Resetting the trip recorder 35-36
 Reset trip 37
 Rev counter 8
 Reversing camera 209
 Reversing lamps 255-256
 Roof bars 229-230
 Running out of fuel (Diesel) 240-241

S

Safety, children 134-135, 138-139,
 142, 144, 146-148, 150
 Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) 235
 Scented air freshener 103-104
 Screen menu map 12
 Screen, monochrome 38-40
 Screen, multifunction (with audio system) 4
 Screens, very cold conditions 228
 Screenwash, front 120
 Screenwash, rear 119-120
 SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 237
 Seat belts 130-133, 142
 Seat belts, rear 131
 Seats, additional 79-82
 Seats, electric 72-73
 Seats, front 69, 72-73
 Seats, heated 73
 Seats, rear 76-82
 Selector, gear 165-169
 Serial number, vehicle 273

Service indicator 29, 35
 Servicing 29
 Settings, equipment 38-42, 44
 Settings, system 30, 16
 Sidelamps 112-113, 252-253, 255
 Side repeater 254
 Snow chains 174, 228-229
 Snow screen 228
 Socket, 12 V accessory 100, 107, 110
 Socket, 230 V 106
 Socket, auxiliary 23, 9, 8
 Socket, Jack 23, 9, 8
 Speakers 101
 Speed limiter 175-176, 178-181
 Speed limit recognition 176-177
 Speedometer 8
 Stability control (ESC) 125, 127-129
 Starting a Diesel engine 222
 Starting the engine 156
 Starting the vehicle 27, 155-159, 165-169
 Starting using another battery 160-161, 262
 Station, radio 21-22, 6, 4
 Stay, bonnet 230-231
 Steering mounted controls, audio 3, 3, 2-3
 Steering wheel, adjustment 74
 Stopping the vehicle 27, 155-159, 165-169
 Stop & Start 23-24, 38, 86, 93,
 171-173, 220, 230, 235, 265
 Storage 99-100, 102-103
 Storage boxes 108
 Storage compartments 99
 Storing driving positions 72-73
 Sunroof, panoramic 64
 Sun visor 99
 Switching off the engine 156
 Synchronising the remote control 54

T

Table position.....	70-71
Tables, aircraft.....	107
Tables of fuses.....	261
Tailgate.....	59
Tank, fuel.....	220-221
Technical data.....	268-269, 271
Telephone.....	101-102, 25-29, 13-16, 10-11, 13
Telephone, Bluetooth	
with voice recognition.....	14
Temperature, coolant.....	32
Third brake lamp.....	256
Three flashes (direction indicators).....	113
Ticket holder.....	99
Time (setting).....	38-40, 31, 17
TMC (Traffic info).....	13
Tools.....	241-243, 246-248
Total distance recorder.....	35-36
Touch screen.....	101, 1, 1
Touch screen ~ Touch screen	
tablet.....	40, 42, 44
Towball, quickly detachable.....	224-227
Towbar.....	127, 155-156, 223
Towed loads.....	267-269, 271
Towing another vehicle.....	265-266
Traction control (ASR).....	125-129
Traffic information (TA).....	5
Traffic information (TMC).....	13
Trailer.....	127, 155-156, 223
Trailer stability assist (TSA).....	127
Trajectory control systems.....	125
Triangle, warning.....	240
Trip computer.....	37-38
Trip distance recorder.....	35-36
Tyres.....	236
Tyre under-inflation detection.....	18, 174, 246

U

Under-inflation (detection).....	174
Unlocking.....	46, 49
Unlocking from the inside.....	55
Unlocking the boot.....	48-49
Unlocking the doors.....	60
Unlocking the tailgate.....	48-49
Updating the date.....	31, 18
Updating the time.....	31, 17
USB.....	23-24, 9, 7

V

Ventilation.....	84-88, 92
Very cold climate screen (snow shield).....	228
Visibility.....	93
Vision, 180° forward.....	210
Visiopark.....	207
Visiopark 1 - Visiopark 2.....	210
Voice commands.....	5-10

W

Warning and indicator lamps.....	11
Warning lamp, braking system.....	14-15
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater.....	23
Warning lamp, driver's seat	
belt not fastened.....	132
Warning lamps.....	11, 14, 35
Warning lamp, seat belts.....	132
Warning lamp, Service.....	16
Weights.....	267-269, 271
Welcome lighting.....	48, 116
Wheel, spare.....	236, 241-243, 246-249
Window controls.....	63
Windscreen, heated.....	93-94
Wiper blades (changing).....	120, 257
Wiper, rear.....	119-120
Wipers.....	24, 119, 121
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive.....	119, 121

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

Printed in the EU
Anglais

10-17



AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON

<http://www.peugeot.com>

Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

